

THE OTTOMAN OF LAZARO SORANZO.

VVherein is deliuered aswell a full
and perfect report of the might and
power of Mahomet the third, Great Emperour of
the Turkes now raigning : together with the Interestes
and dealinges which he hath with sondrie other Prin-
ces, what hee is plotting against the State of
Christendome, and on the other side
what we may practise and put in executi-
tion againthim to his great damage
and annoyunce.

As also a true Description of diuers peo-
ples, Countries, Citties and Voyages, which
are most necessarie to bee knownen, especially
at this time of the present Warre
in Hungarie.

*Translated out of Italian into English, by ABRAHAM
HARTVELL.*



LONDON
Imprinted by John Windet, 1603.

*This booke was written by a
Senator of Nardire*



TO THE MOST

Reuerend Father in God, the Lo.
Archbishop of Canterbury his Grace,
of all England Primate and Metropolitane, one
of the Lords of her Majesties most honou-
rable priuy Councell, my singular good
Lord and Maister.

Most Reuerend father
in God, and my sin-
gular good Lord : It
pleased your Grace
in the beginning of
Michaelmas terme last, to demand
of me a question touching the Bas-
saes and Visiers belonging to the
Turkish Court, and whether the
chiefe Visier were promoted and
aduanced to that high & superemi-
nent authority aboue the rest, accor-
ding

The Epistle Dedicatoriē.

ding to his priority of time and antiquity of his being Bassa, or according to the good pleasure and election of the Graund Turke himselfe: wherein although I did for the present satisfie your Grace to your contentment by the small skill & knowledge which I haue in those Turkish affaires: yet bethinking my selfe of this Discourse which hauing been by me translated out of the Italian tongue, had passed the Print, & had lyen by me these two years not published to the viewe of this English world, vpon some speciall considerations, that moued me for the time to conceale the same. I thought it would bee a very acceptable and pleasing matter now to thrust it forth, for the better satisfaction of your Grace and others, that are desirous

The Epistle Dedicatoriē.

sirous to vnderstand the ful truth & estate of that tiranical and Mahematicall Empire. The Booke was written and penned by one *Lazaro Soranzo* a Venetian Gentleman, in the yeare 1598. at what time *Mahomet* the thirde of that name, now raigning, was expected to haue entended warre vpon the State of Christendome, eyther in his owne perso, or by sending forth some one of his Bassaes or Visiuers to bee his Generall in that action, whereupon the Gentleman author of this Discourse, beganne to enter into a very deepe and subtle consideration of al the designments & purposes which the Turke and his Councell had plotted at home, against the poore distressed seuerall States & commō wealths of the christian Empire: & hauing

The Epistle Dedicatore.

hauing performed the same did publish it in print for the general pleasure & benefite both of his own country and also of al others, that may haue any interest in so waughty & important a busines: In which treatise if he haue somewhat trespassed by terms and wordes against the Caluinists, the error will soone be pardoned, if we shall remember that he is but a relator of others opinions & speeches, though himself indeed be greatly addicted to the popish religion, and the maintenance thereof. It containeth first a perfect and true discouery of the present estate, wherin that Easterne Empire now standeth, together with a speciall report of the reunewes and forces thereof: secondly, the particular discourses that were made, where, and

The Epistle Dedicatore.

and vpon what parte of Christendom this war should be first attēpted: and thirdly a most christian & resolute aduise giuen by the author to all Christian Princes, how they may cōbyne & confederate them selues togither in this sacred war, & be able euery way to meeete withall or any of these Turkish deuises & plots, wheresoeuer & whensoeuer they shall be put in practise, which aduise I wold to God might deeply and foundly sinke into the heartes and mindes of all our western princes, to the end they might ioyne altogether with prayer and force to eclipse that crescent Moone, being now (I hope) at the full, and according to the Turkes owne fearefull presages, as it is mentioned in the 83. page of this little worke, like vtterly to

The Epistle Dedicatory.

to bee extinguished, whensoeuer it shall please the Moderator of all kingdomes to call away this present fatall *Mahomet*, who dooth as yet domineere in that vaste and huge tyrannie. I was once minded (my most gracious good Lord) to haue added hereunto a more ample discourse of the estate, forces and reuenues of that Empire, comprehended in a Treatise (entituled, *Si Turco vincibile in Hongheria, viz. That the Turke is vanquishable and to bee ouerthrowne in Hungary*) written by an other Italian Gentleman, called *Achillis Tarducci* of the Marquise of Ancona. But the time preueted me, so that I could not couple them together, according to my desire. And therfore I most hūbly beseech your Grace to accept of this
my

The Epistle Dedicatory

my poore trauell, being performed by starts and at idle hoires, ywhiche I should & ought to haue employed in your more serious seruices; not doubting but that (if it shall please God to adde any moe yeares to this my *Quinquagenarian* yere of *Iubile*, for which I most hartily thanke his diuine Maiestie) I shal be hereafter, if not more able, yet assuredly more willing to discharge my dutie to your Grace and my country, by doing some further seruice, that may be pleasing & acceptable to any inifferēt reader. In the meane time, I do hereby (as I am bound) wholy deuote my selfe to your seruice, beseeching the Almighty still to preserue & maintaine your Grace in al health, honor, and happines, to the continuation of the peace of this

¶ ¶ english

The Epistle Dedicatore.

English Church, and the comfort
of all your friendes and followers:
Among whome I must acknow-
ledge my selfe, though the least
and the worst, yet in
all dutie and
affection.

At your Graces house in Lambeth,
the first of Januarie, 1603.



The Preface.

Ven as for Princes that would learne
well to gourne and maintaine them
selues, as well in time of peace, as of
warre, there is no one thing more
necessarie, then the knowledge, first
of their owne affaires, and next of
the state of other principalities, (as
those do write, who haue the greatest understanding in civil
causes; & as Experience it selfe doth manifestly declare;) so
is it most fit and convenient for them, to vse their vttermost
care & diligence, that they may haue perfect skill & discre-
tion to iudge betweene truth and falsehood. For if the second
part of their knowledge, I meane touching other mens states
& Principalities: (for of the first it is not my purpose to dis-
course) bee not founded and establisched upon truth, it will
neuer be possible that their counsailes shall sort to any pro-
fite or aduaantage, because it is well knowne, that a false
information, either of a speech, or of an Action, or of a
place, may oftentimes breed no lesse damage, and daun-
ger, then a Counsellor that is either of small capacittie, or
else a lyer, or a Captaine that hath neither wisdome nor ex-
perience. And therefore verie greatly are those Princes to
be commended, who not onely endeouour to eniforme them-
selues of the wistes and loyaltie of their owne seruants, but
also for the more certaintie how matters do passe in truth,
maintaine either at home in Court, or abroad in forreine
places,

The Preface.

places. Men of learning, and of practise: the one for matter of Historie, and properly appertaining to good ciuill government, and the other for the knowledge of the estates, inclinations, designements, interests, treasures, armour, weapons, confederacies, preparations, and all the forces of other Princes: whereunto may be added also as a matter of great importance to know those Countries, which hanc nos onely beeene knowne many a yeaer ago, but also those that haue beeene lately discovered; or may hereafter bee made knowne to the world. In respect whereof, assuredly aboue all other Don Iohn king of Portugall, and Isabell of Aragon, are most memorie of eternall memorie, for the discouerie of the East Indies, and of the new world, which was performed by their fauour and assistance. And the reason of that which hath beeene said, is this, touching the first, because such matters having beeene reported or written, for the most part either to please, or for some aduantage, or fally penning by persons that never were present at the action, or for feare haue concealed the truth, their reports and writings haue need of great caution & censure, before they be beleaved: and touching the second, because one eye-witnes, as the Poet sayth, is more certaine & worthy of beleefe, then a thousand eare-witnesses, as they do most manifestly approue, who by the view of their own eyes, which they haue made in diverse Provinces, do find & acknowledge, that in booke of Cosmographic, Geography & Chorographic, there be many faults and errors to be noted in the gouernement of sundry principalities, in the maners and customs of diverse peoples, and in the true situation of severall places and Countreyes: besides many other tales and fables, which are here and there dispersed, as well in writers of old, as in writers of late times, and onely because the Authours of them haue writ-

ten

The Preface.

ten and recorded either all these matters, or at least verie many of them, without ever seeing any part of them, but referring themselves wholy to the ancient descriptions, which indeed do not fully answere to the knowledge and experience of these dayes, and without iustifying the same by such persons as haue not onely seene them, which euery common Curseters and prating couener, can also do: but also such as haue had the skill to obserue every action, and an intent truly to report it againe. Homer called Vlysses a wise man, (which is the goodliest title that can bee giuen to a Prince, or to a Captaine) not because he had heard, but because hee noted and obserued the manners and customes of sundrie peoples, and sawe many Cities. And peraduenture it was the reason which moued Plato to make a law, that none of his Citizens shold traualle abroad before hee was xl. yeares olde, to the end that being growen wise by age, he might with more iudgement obserue the affaires of the world, and then report them to his Countrey for the common benefit thereof. True it is that those Princes, which doe not willingly admit any trafficke with straungers, contrary to the law and course of all Nations, as for example the Moscouite, and Presbyter Iohn, but especially and aboue al other the Princes of China, who being strengthened by fortifications, and keeping continuall watch and ward for that purpose, will not suffer their subiects to passe or trauell into forraigne Countries, because they hold Platooes opinion to bee true, which he setteth downe in his common wealth, that strange fashions and customes may corrupt home-borne natures: such princes (I say) haue no neede in deed, to be any diligent inquisitors or searchers of other mens actions. But for other states, that with all humane entertainment and intercourse do admit all forreiners, and conuerse kindly with them,

The Preface.

them, and embrace their enterests and confederacies, and therfore are more strongly & entirely enforc'd of necessarie to guard themselves from their neighbors that are of great power & might, so the end they may the better maintaine their owne seigneuries and dominions: for such states (I say) it is great reason & verie conuenient, that they should throughly informe themselves, & endeavour to their uttermost, not only in generalitie, but also in every particularitie to understand all matters whatsoeuer which may be referred not vnto priuate Interesses and commodities, such as, matters of traffike, and marchandizes be, but to the state of the whole common wealth, which are properly belonging to Princes themselves. For as we do read written Hystories to the end we may learne how to governe and manage masters, aswell present as to come, by understanding and reading how things haue fallen out, that haue beene heretofore recorded in particularitie: so ought we also to knowe how the affaires of the world do presently stand, to the ende we may provide remedies in time, and meeete with all inconueniences according to the generall knowledge which we haue learned by our reading: for such is the course and order of our knowledge, that by singularities we proceede to the notice of uniuersalities. And therfore the Venetian Magnificoes, who are not meanely exercised and experienced in matters of state, do not onely send vnto other princes such Embassadors as are of quicke wit and conceit, according to the custome of other principalities, but also haue established for a lave, that at their returne they shall in the Senate make a true and particular report of the Prince and state, with whom they haue beene Ledgers during the time of their Embassage: and so by that meanes they shall instruct the yonger sort, which are trained vp in the studie of politike

The Preface.

politike affaires, to be the better enabled for the seruice of their Countrey. And to the same purpose, that their Common-wealth may be also better governed, as well by the example of such matters as haue alreadie passed, as also by the fresh information of things presently in action, they preserue and keep the said writings with great faithfulness and secrecie in a Register especially appoynted therewerto. And this was the cause, that I perceyuing how the actions of the Turkes, were publikely either too much extenuated and diminished, or else beyond all truth magnified, and enlarged rather upon want of true instruction and information, then upon any stinge of passionate affections, which oftentimes make report of many matters to diverse priuate persons verie indiscreetly, and inconsiderately, began to bethinke my selfe, that it could not choose but proue verie profitable to the state of Christendome, if I would take upon me the care to examine the present estate of the Turkish Empire, and endeavour to discouer the dissignements which that Prince hath plotted against the Christians, in the best manner I could. And forasmuch as it is not always good, to giue too much credite to auncient Records, though they be never so true, because Principalities and states are easily altered and chaunged, either upon the nature or disposition of the new succeeding Prince, or vpon condition and circumstance of time, or vpon some other accident: (yea and so much the rather, for that the Venetian records which were woont to be most faithfull and sincere, are not now impartied or communicated to any man by a speciall prohibition which they haue made amongst themselves, the auncient reportes also beeing now to no purpose, and the briefe that is ordinarily deliuerned abroad, being rather imagined and full of errors then containing matter of truth) I haue resolued with my selfe,

The Preface.

selfe, to be more diligently informed, as farre as possibly I could, of all those particulars which I thought meet and necessary to bee knowne in these times, because I am verily persuaded, that the present warre now in hand, is a matter of the greatest consequence, that is at this time currant in the world. All which I haue done upon speciall and priuate conference that I haue had with persons of great experiance and iudgement, who are lately come out of those parts, not trusting mine owne selfe in such matters, which I haue heretofore seene, and oftentimes verie deeply considered of. And so at last I haue reduced them whole into a briefe or compendious Method, for the benefit and service of Christian princes, & specially of those, who in regard of their interests with the Turke, haue greatest neede of such information. For seeing I was not able, by reason of mine infirmitie, to follow the warres, as I ought to haue done, after the example of Benedict Soranzo my father, who died at the conquest of Gorzolari in fighting agaynst the Turkes, yet had I a desire at the least to doe some seruice to the common wealth, which alloweth it to be a matter lawfull for euerie man to labour and write, as Polyaenus of Macedonie writte to the Emperours Antoninus and Verus, rather then by chooing to liue idle and free to my selfe, I shoulde seeme altogether unprofitable and unfruitfull to all others. So did Diogenes, when the rest of the valiant and couragious Citizens were verie busie in defending the walles of their Countrey, he went vp and downe in the Market place, rolling his Tunne to and fro, because he alone would not be idle (as he said) whiles other were valiantly labouiring with their weapons.

And therefore in this discourse or report, I will entreate of the Ottoman Empire and specially under Mahamer the third

The Pieface.

third, vntill the yeare 1597. The time I do of purpose set downe, because I know verie well, that the euent and successe of warre may alter many things, according to the mutabilitie of the Prince, or necessarie of sundrie occasions, which euen to this houre haue altered and changed sundry matters. And this will I doe principally and chiefly regarding that whiche apperteyneth to the knowledge of this present warre, whiche the Turke now wageith agaynst the Emperour, and the Transilvanian, or any other master, which by occasion of the same warre may fall out to be considerable. For if I would haue undertaken a longer edwise, I should haue too much enlarged this volume, peraduenture to the grieve and tedious conceits of other men. Besides that a great part of the remnant of this historie, I haue at large extended in other my writings, and part thereof I may perhappes performe in other occasions. Howbeit I will not forbear to tell you of many matters, especially of such as may be at all times profitable and beneficall to all Christendome: to the ende, that aswell those which liue at this day, as also those which shall succeede vs in posteritie may in some sort reape some benefite and pleasure of this labours, wherein that I may proceed methodically, and orderly, I will distinguish and diuide this present relation into three parts.

In the first it shall be entreated of the Head, of the Members, and of the forces of the Ottoman Empyre.

In the second, of the Cogitations and Designements of the Turkish Prince: of the causes of this present warre, together with the beginning and proceedings thereof: wherein for the better understanding of every thing, the original of the said warre shall be fetched and repeated, euen from Amurath, father to this living Mahameret.

The Preface.

In the third and last, it shall be discoursed, that suppose the Grand Turke will be reconciled, whether it be good for the Emperour, and the Transiluanian, to entartaine peace wiith him. Wherein also many matters shall be discouered, whicb(if the warre shall continue) may be plotted agaynst him by the said Princes, and which at all times may bee practised by other Christian Princes, to meeete with such perils and dangers as are now imminent, or any other which may hereafter light upon Christendome by the Ottoman forces.

An aduertisement to the reader.



Ourteous Reader, if in all this discourse you do not read e,that *Mahamet Satarzgi*, (of whom mention is made pag. 9.) is now become the General of the Turkish campe. That *Sinan Cicala* (pa. 6.b.) beginn eth to recouer the fauor of the Emperor *Mahamet*. That *Haffan Bassa*, wh^o had the gouernment of Constantinople in the absence of the great Turk (pag. 6.) was first created chiese Visier, and afterwardes put to death: And lastly, that the Prince of Tran siluania hath surprised *Fruyle*, and *Canaal*, and such other like matters. And especially, that the Christian Emperour hath recouered the strong Fort of *Gianarino*, chiefly through the grace and fauour of God, and next by the notable valour and labor of *Adolph Baron of Schwartzenberg*, most worthy of eternall memorie: I pray you remember how the Authour in his former Preface doth protest, that touching certaine accidents he writeth no further then till the yeare 1597. wherein hee also dealeth like a Politician rather then like an Historiographer: & therfore referreth those matters to some other workes which he had then in hand. Farewell.

Errata.

psge 21,b,3,&c 4,as the Dutch do.Kiocai in Beluacensis.
pag.28,b,lin.10,drinke for the Turkes,considering.
pag.34,li.1,for Gally,slaves,read pilots.
pag.cad.li.3,for row them,read guide them.
pag.ca 4,1,27,three hundred thousand.
pag.37,b,li.1,gaadiest.
pag.40,li.9,Fortes therein,which should be vicit
pag.55,b,li.2,3,the Turkes make every day.

THE FIRST P A R T,

Wherein is treated of the head, of
the Members, and of the Forces
of the Ottoman

E M P I R E .

N the Ottoman Empire, there
new saigneth, *Mahamet* the
third of that name: a name veri-
ly no lesse dreadfull and terrible
vnto Christendome, if ye obserue
and marke the actions of the o-
ther two former *Mahamets*, then
fatall to the *Turkes*: themclues, euen in their owne
opinion: for they doe greatly feare, that as the Citie
of *Constantinople*, had her second beginning and in-
crease from one *Constantine*, and afterwards was lost
and destroied vnder another *Constantine*, both being
thesonnes of two *Helenes*: and likewise the Empire
of *Rome*, began in one *Augustus*, and ended in ano-
ther *Augustus*; so this Citie shall be lost againe vnder

Mahamet, a
name dreadful
to Christians,
and fatall to
the *Turkes*.

B

2

The first part

a Mahamer, even as it was with armes conquered by
Mahamer the second.

S. I.

The nature &
conditions of
Mahamer.

THe now living Mahamer, Emperour of the Turkes, is by nature wittie, and by disposition fierce and cruell: but by accident myld, timorous, and greatly effeminated, as hereafter shall bee shewed plainly, by certaine examples of diuers matters that haue beene done by him, both before he came to the Empire, and also after.

Why he hated
Nasuf-Aga, the
Dwarfe.

Mahamer, while he was but young, being shut vp into the *Serraglio*, and bearing great hatred against the Dwarfe Nasuf-Aga, for the many fauours which he continually receiued at the hands of the Emperour Amurath, endeauoured so diligently to pry into his actions, as hauing obserued, that euerie day he sent out of the *Serraglio*, a basket of flowers, hee imagined with himselfe, that vnder those flowers, hee conueied forth some things of greater moment. And thereupon, one morning hauing staied the *Carrer* by force, and powred the flowers out vpon the ground, he found the basket full of Gold, and with exceeding indignation, accused him to his Father, telling him, that he was lesse fauored then his slaves: *For (quoth he) they abound in that which is denied unto me.* And this he spake, because hee found his Father to be verie couetous.

Who were his
grand-mother,
and Mother. as he could not endure that his grand-mother, who was (if all be true) a Gentlewoman of *Venice*, and of the

of the Ottoman.

2

the house of *Baffo*, should domineere in the Court, and ouer his Mother, who was born at *Rezi*, a towne in the mountaines of the *Ducagini* in *Albania*. In so much, as quarrelling with his Father for the same verie oftentimes, and ministring dayly vnto him new occasions of dislike and feare: (for the Ottoman Emperours are so icalous of their owne life and safetie, as both in regard of the common ambition of aspiring minds, as also, and much the rathor of their owne particular and peculiar crueltie, they will not pardon nor spare their owne bloud.) After hee was circumcised according to the Lawe of Mahamer, (wherat were present the Embassadours of the Emperour, of the *Moscouite*, of the *Persian Sophi*, and for the State of *Venice*, *Giacomo Soranzo* my vnkle, who in that busynesse, had the chiefe place aboue the Christian Princes.) prefently he was sent by his Father into *Magnesia*, there to abide and keepe his residence. But when he did there euerie day more and more discouer his fiercenesse and crueltie; by cau sing (sometimes in deed of an indignation and rage, but sometimes of a fantasticall humour) the teates of women to bee pinched off with hote burning tongues: by putting to a most cruel death, two thousand *Sofis*, (that is to say, Schollers) onely because they had made a signe vnto him of some vnychast cogitation: and by killing many other persons, vpon verie light and slender occasions: and finally when he shewed himselfe to be vtterly alienated from verall and wanton pleasures, and wholly occupied in Martiall actions: His Father grew into such a conceite against him, as adding thereunto sundrie Examples of
Mahamer's cru
eltie.

B 2 other

The first part.

other weightie suspicions of secrete intelligences, which vnder the colour of friendship hee entertayned in the Court with *Sinan Bassa*, (he that surprised *Giuarino*, and died the last yeare :) entred into a cogitation with himselfe not onely to haue him better guarded, but also to deprive him of his life, if he did not change his course. Whereof being oftentimes aduertised by the Ladie *Sultane*, his mother, and also aduised by her to plucke this suspition out of his fathers head by addiecting himselfe to pleasure, hee was obedientvnto her therein. And afterwardes he was so farre giuen ouer thereunto, as either altering or dissembling his proper nature; hee is by this accident, and of his owne accord growne to bee a most sensual Prince: and whether it be by habite and custome, or by enchaunting besotment, as some think, (wherein the Greeke, Hebrew, and Turkish Ladies are most cunning and skilfull,) hee cannot now liue, no not when he is in armes amongst his Souldiers, without those pleasures, not without communicating the most important secrets of his state with his Fauourites and Miniones : *Then which there is nothing more dangerous and pernitious to Princes.* Notwithstanding, I cannot agree in opinion with those who doe attribute the cause of this late going forth into the warres in his owne person, to this his sensualitie: for there are diuerse other truer reasons, that may be alleadged of that his lingering.

§ II.

For *Mahamet* being now become a new Prince, determined to informe himselfe first before all other

VVhy Mahamet
lingered
his going to
the warre.

of the Ottoman.

3.

other things, what were the forces of his state. Hee did well know the dislikes and braules which were amongst the Bassaes, and especially betweene *Sinan* and *Ferat*: in whose handes remained at that time the whole management of his Empire, as in due place we shall shew hereafter. There was in *Constantinople*, a verie great dearth of all things necessary for vittaile, and specially of bread. He perceiued that the subiects were much discontented for many debitis, which his father had not payed, but afterwards he satisfied them himselfe. He was not fullie perswaded, what stirres the *Persian* might make, for the death of the young hostage *Haidar*, sonne to *Emir Hamze*, who was eldest sonne to *Mahamet Coda-banis*: which was thought to haue happened not without some suspicion of poysoning. Besides that his principall Captaines promised, that they would follow the warres without his presence: (for they thought, that so they might the more easily enrich themselves.) He gaue exceeding credite to the im- portant counsell and aduise of *Sinan*, who had vowed the vtter ruine and destruction, not onely of the Prince of *Transiluania*, but also of the Emperor without any great difficultie: (and all this, because by continuing still in that supreme degree of gouernment which he then enjoyed, hee might make his perso the greater.) Moreover, most true it is, that *Mahamet* loueth peace: for that sic reuenesse and erueltie which is naturall in him, and yet mollified by pleasure and ease, as Iron is by fire, is rather the dilpolitition of a tyrant, then the hardinesse of a true warrior. And that was manifestly declared on a time; when *Why he killed one of his dearlings.*

B 3

The first part

He threatened his mother.

How the au-
thoritie of the
vissiers was
diminished.

when one of his dearest women, with teares & most affectionate praiers besought him in his gardens, that he would not go forth to the warres, by reason of a certaine strange and wonderfull dreame which she had the night before: but hee, growing into a great rage, for that shee went about in such sort to hinder the glorie, or rather, (as he said himselfe) the safetie of his state, with his owne hand slue her: and did not sticke likewise to threaten his mother, that he would also kill her, though otherwise shee was greatly esteemed and dearly beloued of him.

True also it is, that it was most conuenient for him to applie himselfe to the necessarie of the time, because he was but little esteemed, and not so willingly obeyed by his subiects, as the most part of the former Ottoman princes were: by reason that the authoritie, which in times past was wont to be in the chief *Vissier*, he suffered to be communicated and diuided among the other *Vissiers*: so that whensoeuer any fauour or benefite was graunted to any by one of them, it was verie often repealed and revoked by the rest: *A course that of all other doth sooneſt abate loue, and ingender contempt.* And so much the rather, for that his father *Amurath* had taken order that the *Vissiers* might bee remoued vpon euerie light occaſion, and had also brought vp a new custome to create many for money, and increased the number of them from foure to nine. Lastly, hee was enforced thereunto by the often chaunge and alteration, which he vled to make of his Heades and Capaines, either vpon some wrong information, that he had of the state, and of their natures, or else be-cause

of the Ottoman.

4

cause it is a naturall propertie belonging to the Turks to chaunge their honours, and alio their purpoſes, according to the euents of fabulous Fortune. For hauing receiued diuerſe and sundrie discomfitures, he was of opinion (and indeed he doth alwayes put it in practise) that with the alteration of the head, hee shoulde make the members more couragiouſe and hardie.

But against all these reasons aboue rehearsed, there were other respectes that preuayled indeede with him, and caused him to goe forth to the warre: and in particular, because the Souldiours being poore, newe, and discontented with the auarice of the former Generals, desired greatly the preſence of their Lord and Emperour: and that principally for the largesse and giftes, which hee vſeth to bestowe vpon them, when hee is in the campe himſelfe. Where hauing now at the last appeared in person, hee hath obteyned great reputation, hee hath cancelled the dishonourable opinion that was conceyued of him, and he hath yeelded a singular ſatisfaction to his ſubiects: and ſo much the more, for that he endeuoured himſelfe to gaine the benevolence of his Souldiours, by ſhewing himſelfe not onely verie liberall in bestowing largely vpon them, but alſo prouident and circumſpect in walking on foote and visiting their lodgings. For which action being reprooued by ſome of his Counſellers, for that hee exposed and offered himſelfe too much to manifest daunger, contrarie to the custome of his predeceſſors, hee aunſwered them with the wordes of *Cyrus*, *That all thofe which followed him in seruice*

How he ge-
ned the good
will of the
Souldiers.

The first part

service being his bretbren, it was fit he should make as good account of them as of himselfe. Another action of his there was, which did greatly reconcile their loues vnto him, viz. that being in his iourney, one Euening hee mounted vp to the top of his Pavillion, and espied two Tentes of Spahogl:ni, disunited from the rest of the Campe, to murther and rob such as scatteringly went abroade from their lodgings: whereof being certainly assured, hee gaue them for a pray to the Gianizzaries, and afterwards caused their bodies to be fixed vpon stakes in the Campe.

How the
Turkes call
their Emperor.

Nowe to referre other matters to a more fitte place: hitherto it hath beene discoursed of the nature and conditions of the now liuing Emperour of the Turkes, whom they call *Sultan Alem* that is to say, *The Lorde of the worlde*, or (as others interprete it) *The Emperour of all, and King of Kinges*: and therefore they call him also, *Vlu-Padi-Schach*, that is to say- *The supreme or Soueraigne Emperour*: and to be shourt you haue here heard of the *chiefe head* of the present Ottoman Empire: For as touching his Children, although they doe also somewhat appertaine to the Head of this Emp're, yet I doe not intend at this time to enlarge this discourse about them.

§ III.

The sonnes of Mahamec. **O**nely thus much I will say, that hee hath two Sonnes: For his first and eldest dyed not long agoe. The eldest of those that are aliue at this

of the Ottoman.

5

this day, is of the age of 14. yeares or there abouts, and hath not as yet beene seene: for the sonnes of the great Turke may not be visited nor seene a broad publikely, vntill they be circumcised. And it is verie likely, that keeping companie (as hee doth) with many women, (among whome his greatest Faourite and chiefe Dearling, is one *La Flatra* a Gentlewoman of Ciprus) he is to leauie behind him vnto his successor, many other children, for matter of the vnuall and wonted Tragidies of the Ottomans. Who is Maha mets chiefest Minion.

§. IIII.

Many men hold an opinion, that this Empire wanteth verie good Captaines. Wherunto they are peraduenture induced, because they haue vnderstood, that there are now dead, *Piali*, he that attempted the Isle of *Malta*: *Muſafa*, he that suppressed *Cyprus*, *Pertaf*, *Ali*, and *Vlucchiali*, who were ouerthrowne in the Sea by the League of the Christian Princes, in the yeare 1571: afterwards *Osman*, *Ferat*, and *Sinan*, who performed memorable explites in *Persia*, and else where: and hereupon they do thinke that together with these, there are wanting some valourous persons among the Turkes. A suspition verily, not altogether varying from the truth. For most certaine it is, that the long and troublesome warre in *Persia* hath deprived this Empire of many warriours, that were of credit and valour: howbeit the power and mightinesse of this state being at the first instituted, and sithence encreased by Whether the Ottoman Empire want good Captains or no.

C

armes

The first part.

How the
Turks arise to
militarie ho-
nours.

Armes, and hauing maintayned it selfe hitherto rather by force then by loue, all such as haue any spirite of glorie among the Turkes, applie themselves to warrefare, hoping thereby onely to grow rich, and honourable aboue the rest. For they are not the most noble among them, but ordinarily the most valourous (excepting those that serue in the *Serraglio*, and in the Chamber of the great Turke) that are aduaanced to honours, which necessarily must haue infinite riches wayting vpon them. And thereof it followeth that this Prince can neuer want Captaines of approued experience and valour: and so much the more, because euen euerie priuate Souldiour may mount from one degree to another, yea, and sometimes also *per saltum*, by *Skipp*, to the verie chiefe Generalship. But for as much as it is an ordinarie custome, that in all Armies the glorie is not giuen to any other, but to the chiefe Captaines, hereof it commeth, that because the most famous and best knownen Captaines were wanting, all (as it were) at one time, it is commonly reported, that this Empire wanteth other men, that are worthie of Militarie government.

But I will put downe the names of the principals, which gouerne at this present: to the ende, that if perhappes they shold die, or be deprived of their charges and places, yet in regarde of that, whereof they shal giue mee occasion to speake, the memorie and mention of them will serue mee to good purpose in this present discourse.

§. V.

of the Ottoman: 6

§. V

Before that *Mahomet* the Emperour departed ^{Haffan Bessa} from *Constantinople*, in the most important go-^{governement of} *Constantinople*, which is full of sundrie Na-
tions, and humours, and is the seate of that most huge Empyre, hee set *Haffan Bessa*, the Eunuch, by Countrey an *Albanian*, of a towne of the *Cicasesi*, in the territorie of *Elbasana*. This man was *Bassa of Cairo*, in *Egypt* in the yeare 1582. at what time beeinge recalled to the Court, because he was accused of diuerte misdemeanours, hee was in a great doubt with himselfe, and almost indeede resolute, eyther by fight to saue himselfe, or else to retyre towardes *Ormuz*, and so to passe into the *Indies*, but yet at last to Court hee went: where beeinge imprisioned, and afterwardes rausomed, by his Stewarde for fие hundred Crownes, and nowe againe by his witte remounted to so high an honour, he will (in mine opinion) passe a great way further, if he liue. He is a man verie wise and gracious: a great enemie to the Jewes, and a friend to the Christians.

§. VI.

The chiefe Generall in the Campe before the battaile at *Agria*, was *Hibraim*, borne in the province of *HerZecouine*, and cosin to the grand-Turke. *Hee* is a man of small braine, and most

Hibraim and his toies.

C 2

ynfit

The first part

Vnfit for any commaund: but liberall, and pleasant, or rather fantasticall and ridiculous. He calleth the State of *Venice*, and the State of *Raguzia*, his Cousins. He sayth he will take *Milan* with an Armada or fleet of shippes: and surprise the Isle of *Malta*, by making a mine vnder the Island: with diuers other such like fooleries. He sheweth himselfe greatly inclined to peace, not onely because he is verie timorous, but because he would please the Ladie *Sultane*, Mother to the great Turke, and also his owne wife.

§. VII.

Sinan Cicala,
why he succeeded
Hibraim
in the general-
ship; and chief
Visierhippe,

Cicala degra-
ded and con-
fined into Bur-
gia,

TO Hibraim, there succeeded *Sinan Cicala*, for that in the last fight with the Christians, as the one shewed himselfe verie vnfit for so principall a gouernment, so was this man iudged to be very valourous euen by the Turkish Emperour himselfe, because he had brought backe the Armie, sau'd him his life, and left the issue of the battaile, doubtfull. Whereupon he thought him worthie not onely of such a charge, but also of the chiefe Visiership. Yet at the last he was depriued both from the one office and from the other, because he went about (somewhat too boldly) to aduise and counsell the Emperour, that he would not giue so much credite to the *Sultane* Ladies, and especially to his mother, who, because they would not loose his companie, sought by all possible meanes to make him an effeminate and cowardly person; and in the end hee was banished into *Burgia*, a Cittie in *Asia*, sometime the seate of the Ottoman Princes, where hee remained not with-

of the Ottoman.

7

without danger of his life. For the mother (*as women are wont to do, which either loue or hate extreamly*) ceased not daily to entreat her sonne, that he would cause him to be put to death, because shee could not endure that a slau'e should be so bould, as to goe about to bring her into disgrace. This did *Cicala* feare, and great reason he had so to do, not onely in regard of the vnstayednesse and inconstancie of the Prince, and the great affection which he bare to women, but also because he knewe, that *Hibraim* being now returned to *Constantinople* at the instant suite of the *Sultane* Ladies, and especially of his wife, (for the chiefe Visier, being once displaced, cannot returne againe vnlesse he recover his former degree,) he would continually persecute him, and foster the quarrels that were lately picked against him, by the adherents and followers of *Ferat*, who was an arrant enemy to *Sinan*, with whome *Cicala* had combined himselfe, euen to his death. Notwithstanding *Cicala* being verie rich, of a good wit and great valour, and especially verie skilfull in Land warfare, as one that was trayned and brought vp in the wars of *Persia*: it is to bee thought that if hee can escape these first violences of his Lorde, he will with such dexteritie manage the matter as he will recover that which is lost. For so did hee, after his depriuation from the Generalshippe of the Sea which was taken from him, not so much in regard of the suspition conceiuied for his brothers going to *Constantinople*, as to giue satisfaction to the State of *Venice*, whome the Turke himselfe was verie willing to content. The malice, that *Cicala* bare to that com-

C 3

mon.

The first part

mon wealth, beganne and was grounded vpon a
discouresie, that he tooke against them, whiles hee
was but yong and a Christian, onely forsooth, bee-
cause the Venetian Galeyes had detained a Galeon
of his fathers. He is by his fathers side a *Genowaye*,
but his mother was a *Turke* of *Castelnuovo*: and him-
selfe was borne in *Messina*. He is verie respectiue of
courtesies, and reuengefull of iniuries offered vnto
him.

He hath to his wife a Neece of the daughter
of the late *Rusalem Bassa*, and of a daughter of *Sulem Soliman*, shee that not long agoe, with incredible
expences made a verie long conuayance of water in
the desernes of *Arabia*, for the benefite and ease of

Mecca in Ara-
bia.

One occasion
of the present
war in Hun-
garie.

the Pilgrimes, that go to the *Mecca* or *Macca*, as the
Arabians tearme that Cittie, which ioynly they
call *Medina Almabi*, that is to say, the Cittie of the
Prophet, meaning thereby that *Impious Seducer Ma-
homet*. Which Gentlewoman being now mother-
in-lawe to *Cicala*, is verie famous in these times, for
that she was the chiefest perswader of the last Em-
perour *Amurah* to moue warre against the Christi-
an Emperour, for the death of her onely deare Son,
who was slaine with *Hassan Bassa* in the battail at
Cupa.

§. VIII.

There was Generall or rather Lieutenant for all
Hungarie, from *Belgrado* hetherwardes, in the
yeare last past one *Giaffer* the Eunuch, by Nation an
Hungarian. He was depriued of that charge for
the same reasons, for which *Hibraim* was depriued.
Hec

Giaffer, why
degraded.

8

of the Ottoman.

He hath warred in *Persia* vnder *Osmann*, *Sinan*, and
Ferat, vntill he was made *Bassa* of *Tebrijo*, now cal-
Tauris: where being besieged by the *Persians*, hee
shewed great valour, wisedome and liberalitie.

§ IX.

Hassan Bassa, borne at *HerZecouina*, sometime the
Dukedom of *Santa Sava*, is now the Begler- Hassa (Sonne
bey of *Grecia*, as we call it, but of *Rumelia* as the to Mahamet
Turkes tearme it: for the *Greekes* call that *paravia*, Beglerbey of
which we call *Europe*, by which name [*Romania*] not *Grecia*.
onely *Asia* was called (as we reade in histories) after
the translation of the Romane Empire to *Constanti-
nople*, but also *Europe*, and particularly *Grecia*. This
HerZecouina is a part of the Prouince of *Bossina*,
which stretcheth it selfe towardes *Ragugia*, in the
high way that leadeth to *Constantinople*. The fore-
saide *Hassan*, was sonne to *Mahamet Socoleuich*, so
called of *Socol*, a place in the same Prouince of *Her-
zecouina*, and was sometime *Vijier Arem*, that is to
say, the head of the counsell, and chiefe gouernour
of the Ottoman Empire vnder three Emperours:
which office or charge the *Mamalukes* in the go-
vernment of the Souldan of *Cairo do* call *Diadar* or
Dewidar, and the *Grecians* call it *Protosymbolo*. Hee is
verie well beloued of his Souldiours for his great
pleasantnes & iollitie. Hee leadeth with him conti-
nually many women, and through his great expen-
ses is halfe banckrupt. Hee hath beene in *Perse*,
and was also in these warres of *Hungarie*: and being
the greatest person among the rest of the gouernors
of

The state of
Hassan.

The first part

of Prouinces (for dignitie and authoritie, and bee-
cause his iurisdiction stretcheth into *Bulgaria, Ser-
uia, and Albania*) he keepeth a verie great trayne.
First he was employed by the greate Turke at *Raf-
grad* in *Bulgaria*, aswell to hinder the *Walachians* and
Transyluanians from passing ouer the riuier *Danowe*,
as also if occasion should so require, that hee might
bethere readie to passe it ouer himselfe. But now
he hath hand-ouer-head and verie rashly without a
ny consideration sent him to *Vidino*, sometimes cal-
led *Bidene*, a *Sang jack shippe*, not subiect to the *Begler-
bey* of *Temesuar*, as some haue wrtten, but to him of
Gracia. If hee liue, he will proue without doubt the
greatest Captaine of that Empire.

Vidino.

§ X.

Hafis Hacmat, sometimes *Bassa* of *Cairo*, and *Eu-
nuch* and an *Albanian* of the towne of *Vonari*,
not farre from the *Cicaleſi*, was Generall in *Croatia*
and *Bosina*: but being accused of default for not
hauing recouered *Petrina*, hee was degraded: yet
now he is returned into fauour againe, and is in *Scop-
ia*. He is a iust man and a wise, and one that for re-
ligion, or rather superstition accepted this charge.
He was at the first a *Mahometane Preacher*, (for so
signifieth the word *Hafis*.) He was the first man, that
waged Turkish souldiours on horse-backe, with pay
and prest-money: in which point, no doubt if the
Ottoman Princes would resolute themselues to imi-
tate our Princes, they might haue (as it were) an in-
numerable company of horsemen and footmen.

§ XI.

of the Ottoman.

9

§. XI.

There were also in the Campe of *Persia*, *Sinan*, Sinan.
T Bassa of *Buda*, an *Albanian* of the Mountains of
the *Ducagini*, a man esteemed among the Turkes to
be wise and valourous: And *Mahomet Satarzgi*, an
Albanian also: for the most valiant Captaines of Mahomet Sa-
tarzgi.
the Turks are for the most part of that Nation. This
Mahomet was a long time *Bassa* of *Caramania*, where
he made himselfe knowne to be a man of great wi-
dome: but now soothing (forsooth) the humors of Why faou-
red by the Sul-
tan mother.
the Ladie *Sultane*-Mother his countrey woman, by
shewing himselfe to be desirous of peace, hee hath
not onely obtained the office of *Tzader Mechei Baf-
fi*, that is to say, *Chief Master of the Pavilions*; but it is
also thought that through the same fauour hee will
be aduanced to greater digniries. *They say*, that
while he was *Peich* to the great Turke, that is to say, Why called
Satarzgi.
his Footeman, hee bechaued himselfe so well in a
fray that happened not farre from the olde *Serra-
gio*, where the Regall Palace is, as hauing hardly
hadled his aduersaries with a Butcher's knife, he was
thereupon called *Satarzgi*, or rather because indeed
he was a slaughterer.

§. XII.

There was also one *Haidar Bassa*, hee that beeing *Haidar Bassa*,
Beglerbey was sent by *Amurath* into *Moldavia*,
who by his maner of proceeding there was in a cer-
tain sorte the occasion, why the *Polonians* resol-
ued

D

The first part.

ued with themselues to pay a yeare'y Donatiue or Beneuolence to the Turke, and so to bee agreed with him. He is now in Persia.

§ XIII.

Odauerdi &
Velli.

There were likewise in Belgrado, Odauerdi and Velli, Baffaes both, the one of them well tried in the warres of Croatia and Bosna, the other in the recouerie of Madaua, out of the hands of Srenipetro; who with a band of Cosacthi had gotten possession thereof, rather by rash temerity, then by any great wido.

There are also in the Campe many other Sangiacchi and ordinarie Baffaes, whose names, because they are men of no great fame, are not yet come to our knowledge.

§. XIV.

Hassan; why
he stirred vp
the reliques of
Mudahar to
an insurreccio.

M oreover, it is reported, that there is recalled from Gemen or Gimin in Arabia Felice, one Hassan Arabian, a Foster-childe and kinsman to olde Mudahar to Sinan. This Hassan hauing cunningly procured the reliques of the kindred of Mudahar, to rise vp in a commotion, who had also before rebelled against Osman, he obtayned ouer them a very honourable victorie. And because he is verie rich, he will haue also some good meanes to maintaine himselfe, cuen with the satisfaction of the souldiours.

§. XV.

of the Ottoman.

10

§. XV.

Halil Bassa, Generall of the Sea, second Cousin to the now living Grand-Turke, is of Bosna or else of Hungaria, a Fresh-man, and such a one, as having hetherto had no more skill but to collect and take vp the donatiues and beneuolences of the Maritime Capes of the Arcipelago and of Morea, and this lastyeare to set on fire the Monasterie of the Calogieri in Striuali, called in times past Strophade, because they had entertained the Spanish Armada: is held in no great estimation. And therefore it is supposed, that he shall be discharged of that office, & perhaps there shall be substituted in his place one Giaffer a Calabrian, brought vp by Vluchiali: who although he fled at the ouerthrow in the yeare 1571. yet is he esteemed to be a man, that will proue well in Maritimall warfare.

Giaffer.

§. XVI.

Out of all questiō, that Empire wanteth men that are excellent in the profession of Sea-matters, for so much as the Turke hath not since the yeare 1572. hetherto made any Armada or Fleet of any account: and when occasion of imployment faileth, no meruell though men of worth and valour be not known, nay though they do wholy want indeede. And yet when soever he shall be peraduenture enforced to set forth a good bodie of an Armada, hee may take that course which his Predecessors haue done, that is to say, he may vse the seruice of the valiantest Pyrats, that he entertaineth in Tunis, in Bona, Famous Pirats in Busca, and elsewhere. Among whome the most famous that liue at this day are Cara Deli, Amurath Bei,

D 2

Ma-

The first part

Mahomet Bei, the three Memi, (whereof two are Albanians and the third is of Corsica.) Sala Bei & others.
There is a certaine French politike author which writeth, that Ariadino Barbarossa, the famous Pirate, was allured by Soliman into his seruice, with verie honourable rewards, euen with the chiefe Generalship of the Sea, as wel to adde strength to his Empire with the great riches of Ariadino, as also to the end that Ariadino should thereby bee weakened in such sort, as he should not be any more able to annoy the Ottoman State.

And now after this discourse of the Captaines, I will speake of the common souldiours, and such members as are not so principall.

§ X VII.

*T*He great Turke hath two sorts of souldiours: that is to say, souldiours of his owne, & souldiours Auxiliarie. i. such as come to aide and assist him. The souldiours, that are his owne, be either horsemen or footmen. I will therefore first treate of the former, because the verie sinewes of that Empire consist wholly in the horsemen: and afterwardes I will speake of the rest.

The Spahi.
The best horsemen, that the Ottoman Empire hath, are the Spahi, who liue vpon their Timari. For the great Turke giueth two kinds of wages to his souldiours: one is called Timaro, and the other Vlese. The Timaro is properly a certaine pension or an assignement of rents, which for the most part are levied out of the lands that are gotten in war, and are proportionately distributed amog the souldiours that are of good deserte, & do answer in some sort to the ancient Colonies and to Fees, or rather to Commandams.

The

Why Soliman
vsed the ser-
vice of Ariadi-
no.

Two sortes of
souldiours of
his owne and
Auxiliarie.

Souldiours of
his owne.

The Spahi.

VVhat wages
the Timari are

of the Ottoman.

II

The reward, which the Romanes bestowed vpon their valiantest souldiours to enioy during life, was called *Beneficium*, and those *Beneficiarii*, that were so prouided for: the Greekes callit *Timarion*, and those that enioy the same *Timarati*, and *Timarioti*, deriving the tearme from the Greeke worde *τιμή*, which signifieth Honour. Wherevpon we do read of *Theodorus*, (not the *Tiro*, but the *Stratelates*, that is to say, the Pretor or conductor of the souldiours,) that *Lentinus Augustus* the Emperour, gaue vnto him a Castle in Heraclea for a *Timaro*, long before he was wickedly martyred by his owne band of souldiours, as it is written in *Phile* the Greeke Poet, *Damascene*, and *Nicephorus Calixtus*, and as it is read in the *Menaco*, that is to say, in the Monthly Register of the Greeks. The said word *Timaro* may also be derived, and per-

Niceph. Caill.
Eccl. Histor.
Lib. 7. Cap. 44.

aduenture more truly from the Turkish it selfe, whereby is signified a certaine kinde of pr ocuracion or prouision for some charge or gouernment, which the *Timarioti* are bound to haue ouer the lands that are graunted vnto them.

The *Vlese* is a payment, which is daily disbursed by the Treasurers to the Souldiours that serue for pay, and to those of the Turkes Court, who are therefore called *Vlofegzi*, or rather *Olophagi*, (that is to say, prouided as it were only for their diet, deriving that term from the Greeke worde *αλοφαγον*,

What wages
the Vlese are.

The *Timari*, which the Turke hath in Europe, may bee some sixteen thousande? Euerie *Spahi*, that hath from three to fve thousand *Afres*, of yearely rent, is bound to go to the war with one horse: from fve to ten thousand, with two horses, and so by proportion

D 3

The first part

proportion to a certaine determinate quantitie: and some there bee that will carrie moe or fewer, according to their abilitie, and the desire which they haue of honour. The greatest part of these *Spahi* are subiect to the *Beglerbey*, and may contayne some nine thousande *Timari*: the rest are vnder the *Bassas* of *Basina*, of *Buda*, and of *Temesuar*.

§ XVIII.

The Spahoglani.

Besides these *Spahi*, there are also the *Spahoglani*, who beeing such as commonly come out of the *Serraglio*, are somewhat more daintie and delicate, and are neatly apparraled like Courtiers after the *Persian* manner. They ride (like the *Aisans*) vpon little Saddles, so that they may easily bee vnhorſed. In times past they were not bounde to go to the warres without their Emperour: but at last many of them were (as it were) enforced to goe forth by *Sinan* and *Giaffer*, for verie want of good Souldours: who afterwarde wintered in *Seruia*, and *Bulgaria*, did so destroy and consume the Countryes and the Peasants thereof, as they did more harme to the Turkes themselues, then if they had beene the verie Tartarians, whose apparell also they counterfeyted, to the ende they might easily and handfomly couer their misdeemeanours.

Among the *Spahoglani*, are accounted those also which are of the great Turkes Court: who are distinguished into foure orders, viz. the *Selectari*, *Vlefezgi*, *Guruba*, and *Spahoglani*. But because the number

of the Ottoman.

12

ber of the *Spahoglani* is the greatest of al the rest, they are all generally and indifferently called *Spahoglans*.

The *Selectari* and the *Spahoglani*, are diuided into troupes v.z. the *Selectari* of the right side, and the *Selectari* of the left side: and so the *Spahoglani* of the right, and *Spahoglani* of the left: and different badges they haue one from the other. These foure troupes of *Spahoglani* and *Selectari*, with the two troupes of the *Guruba* and *Vlefezgi*, make vp sixe in all. *Guruba* The *Guruba*, is in the Turkish speech the Plurall number of *Carib* and signifieth *Poore and naked soules*. And *Vlefezgi* is as much to say, as *Hyred, or waged*, as we haue tolde you before.

Euerie one of these orders hath his *Aga*, which commaundeth two or threethousand horse.

§ XIX.

The *Acanzii*, are for the most part Countrey *Acanzii*, Clownes, and are not like the *Hayduches* of *The Hcduces* the Hungarians, as some haue written: for the *Acanzii* serue on Horsebacke, and the *Hayduches* on foote. And peraduenture *Giouius*, and other writers of our time do not well to call them *Venturieri*, or *Voluntaries*: for in cōsideration of some exemptions, and priuiledges which are graunted vnto them, they are bound to goe to warre. True it is, that somtimes they will stray abroad, and robbe the Countrey, as the *Zingari* and *Tirtars* vse to doe. They are men of small woorth. They dwell for the most part in *Dobruccia*, a Prouince of *Bulgaria*, towards the Riuere *Danow*.

The

The first part

The Gionli.

The Baratli.

The Muteferaga.

The Gionli are *Venturiers*, or *Voluntaries*, in deed, who together with sundrie others, whom the Turks call *Baratli*, that is to say, such as live in expectancie, doe goe to warre euen of their owne meere good will. Among these, as also among the *Muteferaga*, (which are of the principall Courtiers of the Court, not bound to goto the warre, but only with the Sultan himselfe,) there are many Christians that serue voluntarie. They haue speciall exemptions and priuiledges. They go wandring abroad euerie where with great libertie, alwayes preuenting the armie, like Out-runners: but they give the fist part of their bootie to their Lord. The other *Baratli* are comprehended in the families of the *Bassaes*, and *Sangiacches*, and in the number of the seruants to the *Spahi*.

§ . XX.

The Timari
of Asia.

The *Timari* of *Asia*, may bee about some fiftie thousand: and so by consequent about a hundred and fiftie thousand horse and foote, and seruants: that is to say, two thirds more then the *Timari* of *Europe*. But they are vnarmed, of small valour, and not apt for warre, excepting onely some few of them that keepe vpon the Sea coastes, and serue in the Galleis.

§ . XXI.

The Begler-
beyes of Asia,
of Africa,
of Europe.

The *Beglerbeyes* of *Asia*, before the last warres of *Persia*, were thirtie: but since there are some moe added vnto them. In *Africa* there are three: the kingdome

of the Ottoman.

13

kingdomes of *Fesse* and *Marocco* are rather tributaries to the Turke: And in *Europe* there are sixe.

But because I have made often mention of this worde *Beglerbey*, I thinke it will not be amisse to tell you what it signifieth.

The Turkish word *Beglerbey*, signifieth a Captain of Captaines, or Prince of Princes: for the *Beglerbeyes* are the Supreme Lordes ouer all that haue any militarie commaund in the Prouinces which are subiect vnto them: and are the verie same, that the *Melicul Vmerca* be with the *Arabians*, and ἀρχόντες ἀρχοντος, with the *Greekes*. Three *Beglerbeyes* there be, that are in authoritie aboue the rest, and sit in equall place with the *Bassaes*, whome the Turks call *Vifers*, when they sit together in the open *Diuano*, that is to say, in the Counsell or Court of audience in the presence of the Great Turke: some doe verie ill and corruptly call it *Douana* and *Tiphano*.

The first of them is the *Rumeli Beglerbeg*, that is The Rumeii Beglerbey, to say, the *Beglerbey* of *Romania*, or of *gracia*, or (as I tould you before) of *Europe*. He resideth in *Sophia*, which peraduenture may bee the auncient *Tibisca*: but it is not (as some write) the *Metropoliticall Cittie* of *Bolgaria* or *Volgaria*, so called of the people that came thither from the riuier *Volga*: nor yet is it *Nicopolis*, which is so famous for the victorie which *Traine* the Emperour had ouer *Decebalus* King of the *Dacians*. Neither is it true that *Sophia* is the same that *Scopia* is, which is a Citie either of *Dardania* or of *Macedonia*, as other some haue written: nor was it *Sardica*, which is famous for the *Synode* there kept vnder the the Empire of the Sonnes of *Constantine*:

E

For

What Begler-
bey signifieth.

The Diuane.

The first part

For at this day that is not called *Sophia*, but *Triadis-*
za.

The Anatoli-
Beglerbey.

The *Anatoli Beglerbeg* is the second, that is to say, the *Beglerbey* of *Natalia*, otherwise called *Asia* the leſſe. He resideth in *Cutheia*, in former times called *Cotyao*, a Citie of *Phrygia*. Some call it by another name, and ſeate it (peraduenture amiffe) in *Galatia*.

The Denizi
Beglerbey.

The *Denizi Beglerbeg* is he that is the *Beglerbey* of the Sea, otherwife called, the *Captaine Bassa*. Hee resideth for the moft part in *Constantinople*, which the Turkes by a corrupt word call *Stamboli*: and hath the chiefe charge of the Arſenall, or Store-houſe for ſhipping. Before that Soliman made him a *Beglerbey*, he was called the *Sangiacob* of *Gallipoli*. He hath for his maintenance, the Reuenues of the office of the *Subafis* of *Galata*, that is to ſay, the *Treasourer* of *Pera*, which office is let to ferme, for the yearly rent of about ſome ſixteene thouſand crownes: he hath also the reuenues of the nine Islands that lie in the *Arcipelago*, the chiefe whereof is *Nixia*.

And now, ſeeing we haue tolde you of the horſemen, let vs tell you likewiſe of the ſouldiours that ſerue on foote.

§. XXII.

The Agiamo-
glani.

These are for the moft parte *Giannizzaries*, which are drawne out of the Maffe or company of the *Agiamoglanī*, that is to ſay, vnexpert youthes culled out of the tenthes of the Christians. The reſt of the *Agiamoglanī* do ſerue in *Serraglioes* to row in the *Caicchies*, which is a kind of Boate, and to drefſe their gardens, and to do ſuch other ſerui-
ces.

of the Ottoman.

14

ces. The greateſt part of them haue not aboue one *Aspro* a day.

The Grecians call *Aspro* (and not *Aspero*, as ſome would haue it) the verie ſame money which the Arabians call *coynes*. The Turkish Oſmannes, and the Turks Alſe, ſo termed for the white-nesſe of it, because it is made of ſiluer. Of *Aspres* there bee two (orts, the leſſer, and the bigger. The leſſer are but of ſmall goodneſſe, and beantie, though they be moft in uſe, and common among the people. The bigger are of better ſiluer: and with them are payed the wages of the ſouldiours, and the fees of the Courtiers. They are by ſome writers called *Siderocapſia*, of *Siderocapſa*, a Castle in the Province of *Thaffo*, which is neere to the famous mountaine *Athos* in Europe, called by the Greeks Αὐλαῖον Οὔποι. Mons AEGaeus, the *Goat-hill*, either becauſe it reacheth into the AEGean ſea, or becauſe it is full of Goates and Kids: or rather, αὐλαῖος, the *Holy hill*, commonly called by the Turkes, *Seitbag*, becauſe there are on it three and twentie Monasteries of *Calogieri*, or *Monkes*, that loue to liue in the Wilderneſſe.

One *Aspro* is worth 24. *Manguri*: (the *Manguro* is a *Manguri* Brasse-Money, and is worth as muſh as the auncient Numulus.) Five good *Aspres* in weight make a *Dramma*, or *Drachma*, (ſeven pence ſterling:) twelve *Drammae* make a *Taller*, (or a *Doller*:) and one *Taller* and a halfe *Tellero*. make a *Venician Cecchino*, which is as muſh as a Turkish Sultanine being a coine of gold, and the greateſt price that the Turkes haue, and is worth ſome ſixteene Paules of Rome, or muſh thereabout. The *Soltanine* or *Soldano*, Sultanino, (as others teareme it) is truly ſo called of the Sultanes, that is to ſay, of the Ottoman Emperours, even as the Cecchino is called a *Dukate*, of the Dukes of the Venetian eſtate: *Brizantini*, and

The first part.

and as the Bizantii, or Bizantini, in the times of the Grecian Emperours, were so called of Bizantium, now Constantinople : and were even as much worth as the Sultanini.

The diverse values of these coynes at severall times, Some writers there be, that haue set downe diuerse opinions of this foresaid account, because they haue had a consideration of their severall prises at sevrall times. For some times the Aspro hath beene worth no more but onely eight Manguri, the Dramma but four Aspres : Nine Aspres made a Taller: and so the Cecchino, as also the Sultano, were no more but 54. Aspres the peece. But now all these Moneyes are altered : For the Taller is worth severtie, or 80. Aspres: the Cecchino 110. 120. and 125. And this came to passe especially by reason of the heauie impositions that were imposed in Constantinople, by occasion of the Persianwar. The auncient mony also that went currant in the Ottoman Empyre was prohibited, because it was stamped with sundry Images upon it, which was forbidden by the law of Mahomet : but rather in deed, and in verie truth, because it was good siluer, and so by coyning it againe somewhat baser, the Treasurie and the Officers did gaine greatly thereby. But now (forsooth) they are not so superstitions as they haue beeene: for they do holde that money onely to be good and lawfull, which is of the best alloy. This little I haue thought good to set downe touching their money, to the end ye might haue a perfite knowledge of the true wages, which the Ottoman Princes doe gine to their Souldiours. Therest of this matter, togidier with the Aegyptian, Araliam, Sorian and Persian coynes, that run currant thorough all this Empire, ye may haue (with the licence of the Venitian superiors) out of a late moderne writer: who if hee had not shewed himselfe somewhat irreligious, no doubt hee would

of the Ottoman.

15

would haue deserued great commendation for the knowledge that he bath disclosed in many Turkish matters.

The Giannizzaries then (as it hath beeene sayd) are The Giannizzaries. the best souldiours on foot, that the Turkish Empire hath. They serue as the Pratorian souldiours did, and the Mamulukes, for the sauegard of their Lord, and as did those valiant youths that alwayes accompanied the kings of Persia, who were called also *Ianizories*, or *Poriers*, as saith the Authour of that booke, whose title is *De mundo*, amōg the works of Aristotle. And thereupon it pleased some peraduenture to think, that the Giannizzaries were so called of *Ianua*: i. a Doore, alluding to the word *Porta*, that is to say, Not so called of the worde Ianua. the Court of the great Turke, because his Court Audience is ordinarily kept in the gate of his Palace. But in truth, they are greatly deceyued therein: for a Gate in the Turkish language is called *Capi*, and so is not *Ianua*. i. a Dore: and therefore the chiefe Porter is called by the Turkes *Capisi Basi*. The word *Giannizzaro* is compounded of two Turkish wordes, The true Etymologie of the Giannizzaries. *Iegni-Zeri*, which signific *Nova Militia*, a new Souldierie: New, not because it was newly brought in, (for it was instituted even by *Osmanne Gasi*, otherwise called *Ottoman*, and renued, or rather bettered and enlarged by *Amurath* the first, vpon the aduice and counsell of *Cara Rustem*, who was then helde by the Turks to be a verie holy man:) But new or fresh they are called, because the Giannizzaries are the sonnes of Christians, taken from their fathers whiles they are but children, by the Officers of the great Turke, as it were for a tribute, euerie fift or seuen yeare, and sometimes oftener: beeing of the age

E. 3

some

The first part

some peraduenture of eight, some of ten, some of twentie yeares, and some aboue. And afterwardes they are for the most part destrubuted among the Turkes in *Natolia*, to the end they may be instructed betimes in the lawes of *Mahamei*, learne the fashions and language of that Nation, and accustome them selues to labour and hardnesse , and then are they called *Agiamoglani*, as it hath beene told you before. When they are growne fit for the warres, then they are sent to the Court, to be admitted into the order of the *Giannizzaries*. Those that are not found fit for the warres, are sent to the Shippes, and to the Gallies, that they may be employed in the Arte of Seafaring. But they that are of a pregnant wit and good Spirit, are at the verie first shut vp in one of the *Serraglioes* of *Andrinople*, or of *Constantinople*, or of *Pera*, and so by means they come to be employed in the seruice of the great Turke about his Chamber, vnder the rule and subiectiōn of certaine particular gouernours.

The Giannizzaries wages.
etc.

The *Giannizzaries* haue for their stipend betwene five and sixe *Aspres* a day, and so haue the *Agiamoglani* likewise: but they are distinguisched by liueries. For the *Giannizzaries* haue two liueries euery yearc, and the *Agimoglani* haue but one. The *Giannizzaries* doe handle the Arquebusē very well , and are properly called the Arquebusiers of the great Turkes guard. They will fight resolutely for honour. Some of the *Giannizzaries* remaine in the frontiers, and in Garisons : some of them also keepe on the sea , and serue in the Gallies, but the greatest part of them are resident, where the great Turke is : and hereupon

it

of the Ottoman.

16

it commeth that there are so many in *Constantinople*, where principally they may sooner become *Giannizzaries*. But those that are made *Giannizzaries* at *Damasco* at *Cairo* & elswhere : perhaps, when they come to *Constantinople*; vnlesse they be there confirmed, may not wear the *Coyffe*, which is called *Zarcula*: the last time that they wēt cut to wars with their *Aga*(a thing not verie vsual)they rather caused great diorder, thē did any seruice: partly because they do not willingly obay their Generall Captaine, (whō by the *Persian* word they call *Ser-Dar*, and by the *Arabike Ser-Asker*:) and partly because in our times their order is indeed imbastardized, and nothing so valourous and faithfull, as it hath beene heretofore.

Aga, is the name of the *Giannizzaries* Captaine, and is the chiefe of all the *Agalari*, who are principall Horsemen, that alwaies accompanie the person of the great Turke, and are so called of the word *Aga*, which signifieth a staffe, and is a token of the authoritie which they haue ouer the Chiliarches, the Tribunes, and the Droncarii or Troncarii, so tearemed a *Tronco*, of a *Bastone* or *Tronchion* which they carie in their hand.

Moreouer the *Giannizzaries* are verie insolent, not onely towards priuate persons, who greatly respect them per-force, but also towardes the great Turke himselfe. For hauing in their hands all the principall forces of the *Ottoman Empire*, and being verie seldome, or verie sclenderly chastised for any fault and thereupon knowing themselues to be very mightie and greatly feared, they haue not forborne many times to threaten, that they would depose their great Lord and Maister, and set his Son in his throne:

Their Captain General.

The insolence
of the Gianniz-
zaries.

The first part

throne: yea and verie oftentimes they haue violently with most barbarous furie enforced their Empcrouer to yeede vnto them in most vnrighteous causes: As for example, (to leaue those that are auncient,) they so dealt with the last *Amurath*, as they compelled him to giue them into their handes either quicke or dead, the chiese *Dephterdaro*, and *Mahamet Baffa* the *Armenian*, (a man whome hee loued beyond all measure,) accusing them, that through their fault, they were not payed their wages by them with good monies.

The Dephterdari. These *Dephterdari* or *treasourers* are three, one is the chiese, and as it were the President of the chamber, the other two are as *Collegues* or *Assistants* in the *Exchecker*.

It hath fallen out also, that they are thus become the more sedicious and insolent, because the number of them is greatly encreased and multiplied, and that through the default of the officers that are sent to make the choice of the youthes: for they doe not choose the best and the most able for warfare (as it was wont to be vsed in times past,) but such as they may haue for want of better men, shuffling in oftentimes, by fauour and bribes, many natural borne Turkes, and sonnes of the *Giannizzaries* themselues: as indeede it came to passe in these last yeares, wherein they haue had no consideration of any other thing but onely of the disposition of bodie, and ripenesse of yeares, to the end they might the sooner shew themselues in the warres, and so passe for old and experienced souldiours, though in truth vtterly voide of any militarie discipline.

§. XXIII.

of the Ottoman.

17

§. XXII.

Some *Spahi* there be also, that serue on foote, as those which are at *Negroponte*, *Misitra*, and other maritimall places, and are emploied for ouer-seers, of the *Gallie-Slaues*: they are subiect to the Captaine of the Sea.

There is likewise an Infanterie or company of footemen in the Garrisons, which is comprehended vnder the name of *Asappi* and of *Befli*. The *Asappi* or *Asep*, are not the same, which the *Hungarians* call *Hussaroni*, as one *Greek* author hath written: for the *Asappi* go to warre for wages on foote, but the *Hussaroni* on horsebacke.

§. XXIII.

Finally the last *Amurath*, perceiving that he had not such a number of souldiours of action and The Culcar-servise as that Empire was wont to haue in times past (for the reasons which I will touch hereafter) hath brought in a new kind of souldierie, both of foote and horse, consisting of townsmen and peasants being naturall Turkes: and hath granted vnto them many priuileges of profite and honour, calling them *Culcarts*, a word that signifieth, brethren to *Slaues*, proper onely to the *Slaues Rinegate* and is a most honourable tearme among the Turkes.

F

§.

The first part

§. XX IIII.

Souldiours in Africa, IN Africa the Turkes haue either no horsemen at all, or else verie few: but some footmen they haue, which remaine in the Garrisons of *Algieri*, of *Tunisi*, of *Tripoli*, of *Goletta*, and of other places on that coast: where for feare of the *Spaniardes*, who are verie well fortifyed with Garrisons, and strongly fensed in those parts, because they are afraid of lossing that which they haue there in possesſiō, it is verie necessarie & behouefull, that they should continually reside and stay.

And these are the Souldiours aswell horsemen as footmē, whom the Great Turke may vse in his warres as souldiours of his owne. Touching whom I am to aduertise you, somewhat of mine opinion.

§. XX V.

The Authors Advertisements touching the Turkes souldiours.

First, that the said souldiours are rather in opinion and fame, so great a multitude as verie many haue reported them to be, then in truth they are: for as much as good souldiours there are but few: meane souldiours not many, and of such as make a multitude, namely seruitors, victualers and others that follow the armie, a mā shold make but small reckoning.

Secondly that the horsemen, in whome principally consisteth the power of that Empire, are not at this day so lustie, resolute, and painfull, and to be shorte nothing at all such as they were wont to be, for that they haue been greatly wasted and consumed in the wars

of the Ottoman.

18

warres of *Persia*, and particularly in this war of *Hungarie*, where barley was so scant, and all other kinde of victualles, for men, horses, cammels and other cartell verie deere.

Thirdly, that the *Spahi*, who are the best horsemen that the great Turke hath, haue not had any meanes to buy good horses, not only by reason of the dearth of all things, (which I tell you was verie great) but also because all their good horses are spent and consumed, neither haue the *Spahi* any commoditie, or benefit to maintaine them withall, or to buy them any new, but only that which they defaulke out of their *Timari*. Moreover, they beeing become men now a dayes greatly giuen to ease and to gaines, do not sticke to take money to interest, rather to the end they may buy some *Timari* withall then buy any horse-flesh with it, yea and to lend it out at ysurie to others that afterwardes become banckrounts. And although peraduenture it may seeme to some, that in these last yeares, the horses were many: the cause thereof was this, that the Turkes are now become so tender and effeminate, (especially since the *Delicates* of the *Perians* haue wrought euen the very selfe same effect in thē, which riot and excesse wrought among the *Grecians* and the *Romanes*) that euery man (for sooth) will carie with him to the wars, so many easments of bedding, kitchen & victual, that they are enforced to vse many horses for those purposes: neither is there any horsemen; (be he never so arrant a clown or peasant) but he carieth more thē one with him: & yet all of them (God wot) stark nought, very leane, & altogether vnseruiceable, as we haue tould you, & as the experience of the battail of *Agria* hath manifest-

F 2

The first part.

manifestly proued.

But forasmuch, as touching the diminution of the Ottomā armies, diuers men do diversly reason, it will not be perhaps far frō the purpose, or at least not inconuenient, if I tel you also what I thinke of it.

§. XXVI.

The Authors
opinion tou-
ching the de-
creasing of the
Ottoman Ar-
mies.

VIthout all question the *Ottoman Empire* doth want of that number of souldiours which it was wont to haue in their armies. And the realō of it is this: 1. that the Turkish estate being now greatly enlarged, those Turks, who in times past for the straitnes of rowme & narrownes of the countrie, ran all to the wars like the *Tartarians*, haue now gotten more ease, greater pleasure, & better countrie thē they had before, so that they do not verie willingly resolute with theselues to leauē their own houses, & to go to the Campe. 2. Moreouer the countrey by reason of the largenes thereof is so far distant &c as it were diuided frō the places where they must fight, that it breedeth great tediousnes in thē to go to the wars: & to people or to replenish it al with inhabitāts it is a very hard matter, especially cōsidering that the Ottomā Princes haue alwaies vised to extirpate &/as a man may say) vtterly to root out the ancient inhabitants, of any new Prouinces, which they haue cōquered & gotten into their posseſſion: or at least to transport thē into some other countries. 3. Ye may also adde hereunto, that the Cōmoditie & encrease of the countrey hath opened a way to the Turks for diuers other, and greater traffiques then they had in times past: wherin the greatest part of thē being em- ployed, they cannot so easely bee resolued now to leauē thē & to go to fight, vnlesſe they bee enforced

to

of the Ottoman.

19

to it against their willes: because by that course they must ſeeke to enrich themſelues with more incertaintie and greater hazard of their liues, then by this of traffike. 4. Besides all this the Turkish armies conſift (for the moſt part) onely of Rinegate ſlaues, and thoſe, Christians: for the Turkes do not make any ſlaues of the Persians or Tartarians, be- cause they will not part or diuide with them their Militarie honours and aduauncements, wherein all the riches, credit and authoritie of their estate doth wholy conſift, and wherewith that Empire doth counterpoife the perill and daunger, whereto it might bee ſubie&t, if they ſhould admit ſo great a number of armed *Rinegados*. 5. Those of *Asia*, who in times past were wont to execute all Militarie func- tions, are now held in ſmall reputation, or none at all, euen as the naturall Turkes are, and eſteemed to be verie base minded and cowards, no leſſe tender and effeminate, then the auncient *Asiatici* were thought to be: and therefore they grauntvnto them onely the honours of *Cadileskieri* and *Cadi*; excepting ſome few, that are admitted to be ſouldiours, and do ſerue the *Sangiacchi*, and the *Baffaes*, who ordinarily and for the moſt part are themſelues ſlaues of *Europe*, and ſent to be gouernours in diuerſe places of *Asia*.

The *Cadiliskieri* (or as the Arabians call them) *Cafaskeri*, that is to ſay, chiefe Judges in the *Ottoman Empire*, and the ordinary Judges of causes both Ci- <sup>The Cadileſ
kieri, and the
Cadi.</sup> vill and Militarie, are two, the one in *Natotia*, and the other in *Romania*. He of *Cairo* is not properly called *Cadiliskiero* (as ſome haue written) but the *Graund-Cadi*, and was iſtituted by *Selēm*, after that he had subdued a great part of the Armenians, the *Ægyptians*,

F 3

The first part

tians, the Sorians, and the Arabians.

Why Greece
is not now so
well peopled
as it hath bin.

And although there be some, that do attribute the want of Turkish Souldiers, to the diminishment of men, by example of the *Arcipelago*, and of Greece, which is for the most part disinhabited, and of all Macedonia, which is the best part of the Turkes possessions; it may be answered, that Greece euer since those times wherein the flower of her greatness and Maiestie was extinguished, hath also remained so barren & void of men, that it was neuer so reinhabited as it was before. *Paulus Aemilius* in one onely day destroyed threescore and ten Cities in *Epirus*: and many Ilandes there be, which are utterly waste, and not habitable for barrennesse. Besides that, the Ciuitar warres of the Romans, the simplicitie of the Greeke Emperours, the *Armadas*, and fleetes of the Saracens, and also of the Latines, and last of all of the Turkes, togither with the notorious iniuries of robbers and Pirates, haue neuer suffered those Ilandes, and the rest of that most populous Countrey, so much as to take breath.

True also it is, that a man may walke many a mile through the Turks Countrey, and find neither men nor houses. But the reason of this is, for that the Inhabitants hauing left the townes and walled places, which are situate either vpon the beaten and common high wayes, or very neere vnto them are eloyned afarre of, and haue scattered themselues further within the countrey, and retired into places among the Mountaines that are more strong, where they haue settled themselues in verie populous numbers, because they would be safe & secure from the murtherers

of the Ottoman.

20

thers, and robberies of the Souldiers: who are wont euuen among the Turks (I would to God it were not so also among vs Christians) to liue at their owne discretion, without all discretion, spoylng and wafting whatsoeuer they can attaine: for such is their vfe and wickednesse, not the profession of true Souldiers, as more at large I haue shewed in my booke called *Militia Christiana*, Christian Souldierie.

And these are in mine opinion, the most certaine and true realons of the Diminution of the Ottoman armes: but why they are now so full of people that are poore, and as it were vtterly spoyled, this reason may be yeclded, viz. for that onely men of euill disposition, and such as are the basest persons, and of no woorth, runne headlong to their warres. And so much the rather, for that the *Spani* themselues doe send thither in their owne rowmes their seruants & knaues, who togither with the rest of the Souldiers, haue no sooner taken a bootie (or peraduenture no sooner want an occasion to catch a bootie) but they will flie out of the campe, and retayne home againe. As for example, the souldiers of *Sinan* did in *Walachia* the last year, who hauing nothing left, but their shirt-sleeues, and being almost vtterly spoyled: because they would not die for cold and hunger, and because they found nothing to steale for their relief in the fieldes, began almost euuen at the first to forsake him: yea and at the retурne of the great Turke himselfe from *Belgrado* to *Constantinople*, all the souldiers almost would needes follow him, and none of their Captaines were able to hold them.

*Now that I haue tolde you of the Souldours, which
the*

Why the
Turks armies
are so full of
poore rascals.

The first part

*the Great Turke bath of his owne, I wil tell you of his
Souldiers Auxiliarie.*

§ XXVII.

A Mong all the *Auxiliarie Souldiers*, whose seruice and helpe hee vseth in his affaires, without all doubt, the chiefe, the most in number, nay the onely men are the *Tartarians*: the knowledge of whom, because it is not peraduenture so manifest to euerie man, I will truly and faithfully display, as I haue done in all thinges before, and will doe also in those matters which are to bee set downe hereafter: following that which I haue learned and vnderstoode from many persons that are verie worthie of credite, and haue had long practise and trafiske with the *Tartarians* themselues, and auoyding especially those fables, which diuerse men haue written of them. I will adde also thereunto somewhat of the *Circassians*, as partly depending vpon them, and likewise of the *Curdians*, of the *Drusians*, and of the *Arabians*.

But because there be diuerse sortes of the *Tartarians* or *Tartars*, so called peraduenture, because they are the Reliques (as the worde in deede signifieth in the Syrian tongue) of those *Isdraelites*, that were transported beyond Media being then not inhabited: I will treate but onely of those that serue for our purpose. And those bee they, which are subiect to a King that keepeth in *Taurica*. Wherof some doe dwell in *Europe*, and some in *Asia*, betwenee the Poole *Meotis*, called at this day *Mar Delle Zabacche*: the Riuers

of the Ottoman.

21

Riuer *Tanais*, called by the *Tartarians* *Don*: the riuer *Volga*, which they call *Rha*, and *Edil*, and the *Mengrellians*, and *Circassians*: and all these are called *Nogai*. For the other *Tartarians*, on this side and beyonde the *Volga*, betwenee *Moscovia*, and the Sea of *Bacca*, that is to say the *Caspian* Sea, and the *Georgians* are partly subiect to the *Moscouite*, partly free and of themselues, and partly vnder the iurisdiction of the *Turke*, there where *Demir Capi* standeth, sometimes called the *Caspian or Iron Gates*.

This foresaide King is called the *Tartar of Crimo*. Nowe *Crimo* or *Kriim* (call it as you list) is the chiefe and principall Cittie of all the Kingdome, although hee bee resident for the most part in *Iegni Bascca*, a place in *Chersonesus Taurica*, called at this day by the *Polackes* and *Russians*, *Perecopska*. The *Crimo* is beyonde that, neere to the Ditch, whereof the *Tartarians*, especially by *Why the Tar- tarians are called Preco-* the sayde *Polackes*, and *Russians* are called *Prekopis*, *Dig- pisi*. which is as a man may lay *Zappahsi innansi*, Dighted or delued foorth, so tearemed of the worde *Procop*, which signifieth a hollowing or a digging, and not of a certaine King of theirs, whom some will needes haue to bee one *Procopio*. Neither is it true (as others affirme) that such a Ditch was made but of late, as it appeareth by *Herodotus*, there where hee maketh mention of the Market of *Cremne*.

The tytle of the *Tartarian King*, is *Han*, (which signifieth a Lorde) and not *Chan*, vnlesse wee will pronounce G.

The first part

The title of
the Tartar
king.
Han,
Kiocai,
Zar.

The surname
of the Tartar
King.

Which part of
Taurica be-
longeth to the
Turke, and
which to the
Tartar.

VVhy the
Moscouite
feareth the
Tartarians.

pronounce *C.* for *H.* as the Italian vseth sometimes to doe in certaine Latine wordes : or with a more harde proununciation as the Dutch doe *Kiocai*, in *Beluacens* is signifieth *Kioc-Han*, that is to say, *Gog-Han*, a worde familiar and welknownen in the holie Scriptures. *Ezekiel. 38. and 39. Revel-20.* The *Polackes* call him *Zar*, that is to say, *Cesar*.

The Familie or house of the *Tartar King*, which giueth him his Surname, is *Kirei*: whereupon they haue beeene called *Mahomet Kirei Han*, *Islam Kirei Han*, *Hassan Kirei Han*. The King nowe liuing is called *Alip* : So that by his stile, you may call him, *Alip Kirei Han. i. Alip Kirei the Chan*, as in Fraunce *Hugh Capet* the king, *Henrie Valois* the king, *Henrie Bourbon* the king, &c.

The coast of *Taurica*, that is watered with the Blacke Sea, till yee come to the streyte of *Oosphorus*, (which is the *Cimmerian Bosphorus*) at the entrance of the Poole *Maeotis*, belongeth to the Turke : But betweene the Continent, and that part which is watered with the sayde Poole, belongeth all to the *Tartar*, although many Christians that vs the Greeke rites and ceremonies, doe dwell there also.

Of these *Tartarians*, the *Moscouite* standeth in greate feare, because with sundrie In-roades they enter into his Countrey, and carrie away manie of his Subiectes, to sell them afterwardes to the Turkes, and others : and in the yeare one thousand fiftie hundred and seuentie: they burnt the very Cittie

of the Ottoman.

22

Cittie of *Mosco* it selfe : howe much more then woulde hee feare them, if hee shoulde goe out of his owne Countrey? In deed the *Moscouite* may annoy the *Tartarians* that dwell in *Asia*, and keepe them from dooing any hurt to the Christians vpon the banke of *Volga*, where they are to bee founde as soone as they haue passed ouer the Riuere. And herevpon it commeth to passe, that they goe out but in a small number. and that in this present warre, the report of their multitude is farre greater then in truthit is.

These *Tartarians* that are vnder the *Moscouite*, are those of *Cassan*, *Asdrahan*, and *Ci-trahan*: of whome, because they serue not to our purpose, I will not say anie thing at this time.

The *Tartarians* of *Europe*, that dwell in *Taurica*, and out of *Taurica*, from the Poole *Maeotis*, to the greate Sea, can not bee hindered by the *Moscouites*, without the good leauue and pleasure of the *Polacke*. For they must needes passe through his Countrey, eyther by the way of *Smolensko*, or else somewhat lower, by the way of *Tanais*, neerer to the Poole. But those wayes are verie difficult, both in regarde of the Riuers, and also of the Fennes and Marishes : and besides that, they are verie long. And these are the verie selfe same *Sarmatians*, which are of *Sarmatia* in *Europe* and *Asia* : For the Auncient Writers doe make *Scythia*, and *Sarmatia*, to bee all one.

G 2

The

The *Tartari-*
ans are *Sar-*
matians.

The first part.

**The Tartari-
ans weapons.** The Weapons of the *Tartarians* are Scimiterres and Bowes. And because they want that quantitie of Steele both of wood and Iron, whereof they haue great neede to make their arrowes withall, they make them of Reedes, whereof they haue great abounding. They are verie keene and sharpe, which they can handle verie well and nimly, as well in shooting them foorth outright, as also backewardes, when they make as though they woulde retyre and flie away: which kinde of fight they vse more like to theeuers then souldiers.

They all ride on Horsebacke: their horses are small, and vnshodde: when they passe ouer the Ices, which in those partes are verie great, they driue a crooked nayle into their horses feete, to auoyde the daunger of slipping: couragious they bee, and verie apt to labour, and take paynes.

§ XXIX.

**Why the
Turkes vse the
seruice of the
Tartarians.**

The Turkes vse the *Tartarians* in their warres, both because they are all of one offspring, (for *Mahometanes* they bee all:) as also, and especiallye because they shoulde not vnite themselves with their enemies agaynst them: for they are the onelie men whome the Turkes doe greatest doubt: and the rather, for that (as

Sultan

of the Ottoman.

23

Sultan Soliman saide once in a Counsell which hee helde in his owne presence, touching those of Sultan Soliman. Princes whome the *Ottoman* Empire ought chiefly to feare:) the *Tartarians* may of a soden runne with infinite numbers euен to *Constantinople* it selfe, and arriue there, before that euer the Turkes can be prepared for defence against them. And hereupon it commeth to passe that the Turkes do endeavour by all kinde of good offices to hold them in friendship, and to be allied with them in mariage: (for in that respect *Solimans* mother was maried to his father, she being a *Tartarian*, and the daughter of *Mehemet Kirei*:) the Turkes also for the same reason doe bestowe diuers contributions and beneuolence vpon the *Tartarians*, yea, such and so great, as in the time of warres a Leauie of the *Tartarians* is verie costly to the great Turke, because hee must of necessitie giue them so much, as may bee sufficient not onely to maintayne themselues, but their wiues also and children which they leauie at home: so that to tie them the faster and safer vnto them, besids the bonds of alliance and kindnesse they are enforced to vse this necessarie exigit, whereas on the contrary side, in the time of *Soliman* the *Tartarians* were enforced vnder *Sedac Kirsi* to gratifie the Turke.

The *Moscouite* and the *Polack* likewise do bestow great gratuities vpon the said *Tartarians*, for feare of their soden in-roades which they may make vpon them in the time of haruest.

The *Moldauian* also, although hee pay tribute to the Turke, yet is he bound in many respects to grafie the *Tartarians*, who are in those parts none other wise

G 3

The first part

wise held to be friends to any, then the *Switzers* are to the Princes in our countries

The voyage
that the Tartars
may make into
Hungarie.

But because the passages of the *Tartarians* into *Hungarie* in this time of warre, are diuers and vncertaine, and so may also be in times to come, it shall not bee vnfruitfull and inconuenient, if I touch the courses and voyages, which they may take, to the end that we on our side may the more easily endeavour and prouide either altogether to hinder them, or at least to make their arriuall there to bee more difficult vnto them.

§ XXX.

THe *Tartarians*, when they will ioyne thēselues with the Turkish armies, must needs of necessarie passe through the *Polack* countrey, either inhabited, or wast and desert. The countrey inhabited, is *Russia*, & *Podolia*, two Prouinces which are on their right hand. They may passe also on a soden vnder *Premisla*, by the vallies that lead into vpper *Hungary*. But both these former waies may be easily stopped by the *Polackes*, and the last also by the *Imperialistes*, and the *Transyluanians*. They may likewise passe at *Sumber*, or somewhat neerer to *Transyluania*: but this is a more difficult way then the rest.

Through the
Polack coun-
try inhabited:
By Russia and
Podolia.

By *Premisla*.

By *Sambur*.

Through the
wast Polack
Country.

By *Seuerino*.

of the Ottoman.

24

(so called by the christians in memorie of *Severus* the Emperour:) but this may be stopped by the *Polackes*, the *Moldauians* and the *Walachians*. At *Seuerino*, if they had the countrey friendly and fauourable vnto them, yet they may peraduenture haue somwhat to do, before they can passe ouer the Riuere *Danow*: but now forasmuch as that place is at the deuotiō of the *Transyluania*, they shal be enforced to passe it, & to make way to thēselues by force&arms: which will proue no lesse difficult vntō them, then if they should haue attempted the voyage by land.

The *Tartarians* also may come to the *Niestro*, by ^{By Achermano} the way that is nigh to the Sea: for they may passe to *Achermano*, (which the *Polackes* call *Bialogrod*, the *Moldauians* *Cittat-Alba*, and the *Hungarians* *Nestor Alba*,) a territorie and Sangiacche-ship belonging to the Turkes, at the mouth of the said Riuier *Niestro*, and not at the mouth of *Ister* or *Danubius*, as soone haue written: and it is neere to the Sangiacche-ship of *Bendero*, called by the *Polackes* and *Moldauians* ^{By Bendero} *Tegina*, and is a place in the Prouince of *Moldauia*, but subiect to the Turke, through the default of that *Aaron the Vainode*, who in this present warre, thinking to reconcile himselfe, for the revolt which he made from the Turkes, would not surprise it, when he might.

In the laid Sangiacche-shippes, the *Tartarians* may take two wayes, the one by passing the Riuers of *Pruto* and *Sereto*, and so annoyng *Walachia*: the other without passing the saide Riuers, and by going ouer the *Danowe* in *Bulgaria*, which is a countrey belonging to the Turke. This last way, though at this

(so

The first part.

Which way
the Tartarians
went & came
to and from
this prefet war

this time it would be the safer, yet for all that it would not be without great difficultie, yea, and so much the rather, for that the Turkes themselves will not willingly yeeld their consents that the *Tartarians* shall take that way, for feare least they should waft their countrey. The first time, that they passed to this present warre, they tooke the way of *Premisla*, and in their retурne they went home by *Sene-rino*: but after that they were discomfited and overthrown by the *Walachians* and *Transyluanians*, to the end they might more easily saue themselues in their retурne homewardes, they tooke the way last before named.

§. XXXI.

The Giebeli.
Tartarians,
their weapons
& habitation.

Why the
Turkes vse
them.

BEsidz the *Tartarians* aboue mentioned, there are also certain other *Tartarians* called *Giebeli*, which may be to the number of about two thousand, they haridle the Scimitarre and the Bow: they weare a Salate and a Iacke, whereupon they haue gotten the name of *Giebeli*, that is to say, men of armes. They dwel commonly in *Dobruccia*, between the *Danowe*, and the Ruities of the wall, that was caused to bee made by the Greek Emperours, from *Gorasui*, neere to *Silistris*, as far as *Constane*, vpon the banke of the Greeke Sea. These *Tartarians* do the Turkes verrie often vse, because they would make the worlde beleue that the *Tartarians* of *Crimo*, are come to assist and succour them: and so causing these few *Tartarians* to passe ouer on this side of the *Danowe*: (for they dwell in the vttermost parte of *Moldauia*, bee-

tweene

of the Ottoman.

25

tweene the *Niesbro* and the *Danowe*,) euen vntil they come to the great sea in the Sangiack-ships of *Bendero* and *Achermano* (whereof I tould you somewhat but a little before,) they doe mightyly encrease the rumor of them, and breede a great feare in our people. Lastly, I will conclude this discourse touching *The voyage of the Tartars of Europe into Persia in old time.* the *Tartarians*, with a conceite worthie of consideration and memorie, and it this, that as the *Tartars* of *Europe* in the time of the Romanes went euen as farre as *Persia*, by the way of *Demir-Capi*, that is to say, the iron gates, a place verie famous and renoumed *jin* regard of *Alexander* the great, passing through the countrey of the *Georgianes*: euen so the verie selfe same way was taken in our daies, particularly by *Osman Baffa*, who therein did greatly labour to imitate, or rather to ouergo *Domitus Corbulo*, and *Pompeius Magnus*, as yee may reade in *Tacitus* and *Dion*.

§. XXXII.

THe *Circassians*, sometimes called the *Zighi*, *The Circassian* are by the *Polackes* named *Pientzcorfbii*, that is to say the Inhabitants of fve mountaynes, and therefore they are also tearm'd *Quinque-Montani*. *i.* Fiu-Mountayne-men. They doe not reach to the *Caspian Sea*, as some haue written, but only to the *Cimmerian Bosporus*, to the Poole *Maeotis*, and to the great-Sea. Some of them are Freemen: but *Their maner* some of them are tributaries to the afore named *Tartar of Crimo*. They liue all after the Superstitions and rites of the *Gracians*. They goe with the *H* *Turkes*

The first part

Turkes to warre, but they serue them euen for poore pouertie. They vse to sell one another of themselues: and many of them are become Sclaves, as well by the way of *Mengrellia*, and by the *Tartarians*, with whome they haue to doe sometimes, as also by the meanes and conuenience of *Afaf*, which is a Forte belonging to the Turke at the mouth of the riuere *Tanais*. They are well accouuted of, for their good disposition and liuely courage. In the time of the Souldanes all the *Mamalukes* almost were *Circassians*, and thereupon came the *Mamalukes* to be called by the Turkes, *Zercas*. In *Circassia* was *Osman* heretofore ouerthrowne by the *Cassacchi*: (what they are, it shall be told yee in due place:) in his retурne from *Persia* to *Constantinople*, after he had passed the Riuere *Phas* or *Phasis*, (which is so famous for the Golden Fleece) in *Mengrellia*, which is vpon the great-Sea in the confines of *Trabzon*, a Riuere which *Pompey* durst not passe ouer, when he pursued *Mithridates*, for feare of the *Tartarians*, the *Circassians*, and other people neere thereaboutes.

And let thus much suffice to be spoken of the Tartarians and Circassians.

The *Turke* is also wont sometimes to invite the *Curdians* or *Gurdians* to his warres: who are *Mahometans*, and liue like Freemen, and are verie couragious. They dwell in the region of *Bagadat*, and in that part thereof, which now is called *Curdistan*, that is to say, *Chaldaea*, named by the Arabians *Keldan*. Some are of opinion, that they may one day do great hurt to the Turkish Empire. Some thinke

the

Osman ouerthrown by the Cassacchi in Circassia.

The Godden Fleece.

The Curdians

of the Ottoman.

26

the same also of the *Drusians*, who are souldiours by The Drusians profision, and dwell in the Mountayne *Liberus*: as also of the *Arabian Bandoliers*, who are Lordes and Maisters of the Champeine, as sometimes our *Fou-ruscitti* or outlawes are wont to be among vs. But in trueth I do doubt, that the Maiestic and State of that Empire shall haue small cause to feare either the first, who do inhabite but a small countrey, or the second, who are but some few Mountaine people, or to be briefe the last, who are indeede a confused number of theues.

Now lastly, it will bee verie conuenient, that I shewe vnto you, the strength and forces of that *Victuall, Ar-mour, & Munition of the Turke.* Empire, that is to say, how the great Turke is able to prouide himselfe and his Armies with victualles, with Armour, and with Munition, aswell by land as by Sea. For in vaine were it to haue an Armie, and not to be able to arme and feede both men and cattell, or to make an Armada without timber and people. I will also by the way touch vnto you, how these prouisions of the Turkes, may bee either stopped, or verie hardly be brought vnto him: and by the knowledge thereof it will the more easily appere, what the enimie can by all likelihoode doe against vs.

§. XXXIII.

And to beginne with victualles, as a thing more corne in Asia.
A necessarie then any other prouision whatsoeuer, for the maintainance of an Armie, most certaine it is, that the Turke wanteth not corne: For

H 2

he

The first part.

The wayes to conuay it into *Hungarie*, he hath many diuers and sunconuay it into dry wayes. But that which is by the great Sea at *Hungarie*.

he may haue great store of it out of *Asia*, and to conuay it into *Hungarie*, he hath many diuers and sunconuay it into dry wayes. But that which is by the great Sea at the mouth of the *Danow*, hath no good free passage, in regard of the *Waluchians*, who do now depende vpon the *Transyluanian*. That by *Constantinople* is to long a iourney, and yet there can none be caried that way neither. The most free and easiest way of all the rest for this purpose, is that by Sea to *Salonicchi*, and from thence by the way of *Scopia* to *Belgra-*

do, where the countrey being verie plaine and euen,

the Turkes may verie commodiously make their coniuoyes, and much better they might do, if they had any cartes.

Corne in Eu-
ope.

In *Europe*, the Turke hath not now any great cōmodities of victualles. For *Moldavia* and *Walachia*, although they be Prouinces, that are by nature verie fruitfull of Barley and Wheate, yet by the occasion of this present warre, they are beeome almost altogether vnfruitfull, not onely because they are not now sowed as heretofore ordinarily they haue beeene, but also beecause that little which the gronde yeeldeth, is purloyned by men, and trampled with horses. Beesides that, the *Walachian* and the *Moldanian*, who beeing as tributaries to the Turke, ought to minister vnto him all the helpe that possibly they can, yet at this present they will faile to doe it: the *Walachian*, beecause hee is vtterly alienated from him, and the *Moldanian*, because hee hath enoughe to do to furnish himselfe.

The

of the Ottoman.

27

The Turkes may also conuay some vittailes out Corne in Ma-
of *Macedonia*, and *Seruia*, (two Prouinces that are cedonia and
woont to bee verie plentifull of corne :) which they Seruia: and
may easily do, because the Country is partly plaine, how to con-
and partly hilly, but without any stones. They may ueigh it into
also take the same way of *Salonicchi*, by passing Hun garie.
through the Champaines of *Moraua* in *Seruia*, not farre from the most fertile plaines of *Cossomo*, which our writers do call the Champaines of Black birds, by reason of the great multitude of them that were seene there before the battaile, wherein *Amurath* the first was slaine. Whereupon I do note by the way, An error of
that the ancient writers were in an error, whiles the ancients touching Ma-
they thought, that a man coulde not possibly cedonia and
pass through all the Mountaines of *Macedonia* and Seruia.: considering that they are verie easie to bee Seruia. excepting onely that part of them, which out of *Epirus* entreteth into *Macedonia*, for that is in deede vnpossible with carriages.

Now touching the point, how to hinder the How the Turk
Turkes vittailes, that they may not be conueighed ^{may be hin-} dered from his
and brought into those Countries, where the wars vittailes by sea.
now are. I doe thinke that it will proue a verie difficult and hard matter for vs Christians to bring it to passe, either by sea or by land. The vittailes of *Asia*, which come out of *Ægypt*, and are embarked at *Alexandria*, *Damiata*, and other places, cannot be impeached or stayed, without an Armada, or a flete of shippes, nor without fighting also with the flete of the enemie. Besides that the *Arcipelago*, where this must specially and principally bee attempted, hath many channels.

H. 3.

And

The first part.

By land.

And by land, they can be stopped but in one onely case (vnlesle the Turke might bee debarred and kept out of his owne Countrey, which is the hardest thing of all.) And this onely way is for the *Transilvanian*, togither with the *Walachians*, to passe ouer to the hither side of the *Danowe*, and interpose them-selues betweene *Bulgaria*, and *Seruia*, which in times past were called the two *Misæs*. And yet when all comes to all, there is no remedie but we must looke to fight, and therefore it will behoue vs to haue a verie mighty armie in a readinesse.

What vittaile
the Spahi; the
Sangiacchi, all
villages, and
Belgrado do
furnish.

Moreouer, euerie *Spahi*, is bound to bring to the campe, one load of corne for his owne vittaile. All the *Sangiacchi* doe send thither, Meale, Barley, and Graine, when and as much as they can. And all the villages also are bound to send a certaine quantitie of Barley, whensoever they are commaunded. And in *Belgrado*, there is ordinarily made great store and prouision of Bisket, Meale and Barley.

§ XXXV.

Why the
Turks cannot
set forth to
warre in the
beginning of
the yeare: nor
keepe long in
one place.

IT is verie true, that the Turke cannot set forth his armie towardes the warres before the grasse bee growen, or rather not before haruest-time as well in regarde of the prouisions (as I haue told you) which the *Spahi* & others are bound to bring to the camp, as also because it is necessarie, that both men and cattell should haue good meanes to maintain them selues in the field; yea and so much the rather for that the armie is verie populous, as indeede all the Turkish Armies are for the most part, of people, of horses

of the Ottoman.

28

horses, and of Camels: whereupon it falleth out also, that that they cannot long bee maintained nor stay togither by great heapes and multitudes in one place by reason of their great expences.

Out of *Scopia*, they haue some little store of Rice, whereof the Turkes doe make themselues a pecu-
Rice from Scopia, Alexandria, and other places, whither our Marchants do vse to transport it.

§ XXXVI.

They haue great abundance of flesh-meates, al-
their Countrey ouer (specially where their soul-
diers meeete together, and goe to warre:) namely of
Muttons, and of Beeffes, which are (as a man may
say) innumerable in those huge and wide Cham-
paines where they feede and pasture: yea and so
much the more store of them they haue: because
the *Moldauian* is content that the Turkes shal passe
through their Countrey, with their cartell, their ho-
nie, and their Butter, in regard of the great custome
and toll which they gaine of them for the passages
therof. Although (to speake the truth) there doth not
now passe that way, so great a multitude of Muttōs,
as in time past there hath done, because there was
not heretofore so good a riddance of them into *Po-
lonia*, as now there is. Which in deede is no small
griefe and displeasure to the Turkes, who doe vse to
eat the flesh of Muttons with great delight and ve-
rie sauourly, whereas on the other side they do not
so greatly care for the flesh of Beeffes.

The

The first part

The Turkes also vse to carrie with them a certaine kinde of salt poudred flesh, which being beaten into powder, serueth them for a verie great nourishment, especially if they mingle it with their pottage, or broath: and this meate they call *Tzorba*.

§ XXXVII.

And now to their drinke. It is most certaine, that there want no good waters ouer al the country where the warres are. And for water, it ought not to seeme a straunge drinke: for the Turkes considering that by their law they are bound to drinke it, as the *Carthaginians* also do: and as for Religion sake likewise it is vfed to bee drunke by the inhabitants of the Kingdome of *Tarsus*, which on the East confineth and bordereth vpon *Catalo*, and is famous in the holy Scriptures for the three wise kinges, that came from thence to worship Christ. But what that came to a great aduaantage it is to the Turkes to haue this commoditie of water, let them consider that haue conuersed and practised with the Dutche, (although at other times also, as *Tacitus* writeth, they vised to drinke at the Well-head.) certaine it is, if we mark the matter well, that *Mahomet* their Law-giuere, did for none other cause so straitely commaund his followers, that they should so precisely abstaine from wine, but onely because that hauing throughly resolued with himselfe to haue his law defended with force & armes, he thought it conuenient by meanes of sobrietie to make them as fit and apt for the wars as possibly he could. And besides that also, he did in-

What meanes
Mahomet vled
to make his
followers to
be souldiers.

thrall them to the imaginary opinion of the gouernment of *Destinie*, to the end hee might make them the more obedient to their Captaines, and the more resolute in fight. He also ordained, that they should often wash themselues, to the ende, that his Armies might the more easilly bee kept cleane and free from those euils and diseases, which do ordinarilie breed of filthinesse, and likewise make them the more able to endure the hardnesse and distemperature of the weather, with other such like policies.

Their drinke.
Water.

The Country
of the 3. kings
that came to
worship Christ

of the Ottoman.

29

The Turkes also haue a certaine kinde of Breuage or drinke (which they call *Tzerbet*, and wee *Serbete*, a Soupe or Broath:) and it is made of Raisins and water, sometimes mingled with the iuice of Lemmons, and with Muske: most daintie and delicate it is, to the taste, and will often strike vp into the heade like Wine. Whereof also if any of the Turkes are desirous to drinke, especially the *Giannizzaries*, who will swill of it beyonde all measure, they may haue some in *Hungarie*, and chiefly in vpper-Hungarie, where the wine of *Tocca* is verie famous.

A drinke cal-
led *Tzerbet*.
The Turkes
especially the
Giannizzaries
will drinke
wine.

§ XXXVIII.

Astly, the Turkes cannot want prouision of wood and timber, which (as *Cyrus* fayth) is as ne-
cessarie for an armie, as any other thing whatsoeuer. True it is, that in some places of *Seruia* there is no great store of it: but there is as much as may be desi-
red, in the rest of the voyage from *Constantinople* to *Belgrado*: and in the way of lower *Hungarie*, on this side

The first part

Baska & Srema
plentifull of
wood.

side of the *Danow*, euuen vnto *Vesperino*: but specially in *Bazca*, & also in *Srema*, which is a Prouince so cal- led of the Cittie *Sirmio*, so noble and renoumed, principally for the Councill that was kept there.

These two Prouinces doe lie on this side of the *Danow*, betweene the *Danow* it selfe, and the riuers of *Draua* and *Sava*, and haue great abundance of wood and timber, by reason that they haue not felt the miseries of the warre, because the Turkish armies haue not taken that way, but onely in the beginning vnder the conduct of *Sinan*.

Armour of
the Turkes.

*And now that we hane discovered whatsoever is necef-
farie for the vittaile and foode of their men and cattell : it
followeth also to be considered, how the Turkes are at this
present armed, and how they may haue munition sufficient
for the warre, whether it be Defensiuе, or Offensiue.*

§ XXXIX.

Armour of
the Spahi,
Launce,
Pudogan.
Scimitarre.

THe *Spahi* of *Europe*, to strike a farre off, doe vse to weare a light Launce with a pomzell, and to strike at hand, an Iron Club or Mace, which they call *Pusdogan*: or else a *Scimitarre*, or *Cimitare*: for so by a barbarous worde they call that weapon, which by little and little groweth crooked towards the poynt, and is like for all the worlde to the Knife, that *Xenophon* attributeth as proper to the *Persians*, called by the Turkes *Cedare*, by the Arabians *Seife*, and by the Dutche *Sabell*, a corrupt worde taken from the *Hungarians*, and *Sclauonians*, who call it *Sabla*. Some of them doe also weare an Axe, and a short sword. Some few Iacks,

and

of the Ottoman.

30

Axe.
Short sword.
Iacke.
Targate.
Dart.

and Targates they haue: but the rest of all their bo- die is vnarmed. None of them doth handle the Pi- stoll: and many of them doe onelie vse the Dart. The greatest part of those *Spahi*, that kept in the frontiers of *Croatia*, and of *Hungarie*, had Cuirasses, and Corflets, but they are almost all extinguished, & those that are of late gone thither in their roomes are not accustomed to such armour.

All the *Giannizaries*, and some of the *Asappi*, Armour of the *Giannizaries* and some handle the Arcubuse, but for the most part not so wel as it is handled by vs Christians. Which what ad- vantage it may be vnto vs, let those iudge that saw the handling of the Arcubuse, *Da pofta*: that was so profitably vied in the actions of that most glorious Gentleman *Alexander duke of Parma*.

The *Acanzii*, the *Spahoglanii*, the *Chiausii*, (which vse ordinarily to go as Messengers or Embassadors) *Acanzii*, *Spa- hoglanii*, *Chi- ausii*, &c. and other Caualieroes of the great Turkes Court, do handle the Dart, and some of them the Launce, after the *Asian* maner. To be short, all the footemen almost go with a Scimitarre, and without any Mur- rion, but the most part of them with Daggers after the Greeke fashion. The horsemen of *Asia* doe car- rie, as it were, half Pikes. Many of them are Archiers: they ride vpon low Saddles, so that they may easily be ouerthowen to the ground.

§ XL.

There are also in the Turkish armies diuers Of- ficers or seruants, as the *Giebegi*, that is say, *Armourers*, *Gunners*, *Armourers*, *Gunners*, *Topige* or

I 2

The first part.

Armenians. or *Bombardieri*, that looke to their Guns: whereof some haue pay, and some haue none, but diuers fees and recompences they haue. The *Armenians* for the most part do serue for Pioners, and do such workes among the Turks, as our *Spazzacamini* or Chimney-sweepers doe among vs *Italians*, and thereupon are in scorne called *Bochgi*. There go also with the camp many *Vonicchi*, who are villaines or slaves. They liue after the Greeke maner: they serue for any vfe, and dwell in *Seruia* and *Bulgaria*. *Vonicchi* is a *Slaueine worde*, signifying Bellicos, warlike men, because in times past they were much employed in the warres. Many other there be likewise, that voluntarily follow the Armie to be Pioners, and to doe such other base seruices, and are called *Sarchor*.

Militarie discipline of the Turkes.

And here in this place I will omit at large to entreate of the Militarie discipline of the Turkes, because that point hath beeene better examined by others then I can do. Only I will tell you some speciall matters, because I will not leaue the Reader fasting and unsatisfied in this behalfe, as peraduenture in other poyntes I haue alreadie gluttied him.

§ XLI.

Qualities required in Christian Souldiers.

VVithout all doubt, the Turkish souldiers are farre inferiour to our souldiers, that are exercised. By our Souldiers, I doe vnderstande not only the *Italians*, but also those of *Spaine*, of *France*, of *Hungary*, of *Germany*, & of other natiōs that vse to go to warfare in our armies. And by exercised soldiērs, I mean such as haue not only bin wel instructed in

of the Ottoman.

31

in the arte of warrefare, but also such as haue beeene accustomed with the exercises of a Christian souldier, to the end that accompanying valour and vertue both together, they may the more surely in the seruice of our Princes become victorious, although they be peraduenture farre inferiour in number to our enemies. Most evident and plaine are the examples of the victories obtayned by a few Christians vnder *Marcus Aurelius*, *Constantinus*, *Theodosius* the elder, *Theodosius* the yonger, *Honorius*, *Aetius* and many others: but more particularly ouer the *Saracenes*, vnder *Pelagius* the first, King of *Castile*, who with one thousand slew twentie thousand of them: and vnder *Charles Martell*, who at one onely time ouerthrew and vanquished three hundred, threescore and fiftene thousand of them: I leaue to tell you what the Christians also did, vnder *Alfonsus* the Chaste, *Ranimiro*, *Ferdinando*, and *Waltero* the great Master of the Duch order, who slew a hundred thousand *Tartarians* with the death of one onely of his owne souldiers: and *Corrinus*, who after hee had obtayned seauen victories against the Turkes, with fiftene thousand onely, most valourously fought the eight battail against eightie thousand of them, as the Christians (among others) *Thomas Bozius* writing against *Macchiavel* hath at large described.

Moreouer, euerie man that hath warred with the Turkes doth know well enough, that they lodge at large: and that in their marching they go verie confuledly, so that they may verie easily be endamaged in the tayle of their Armie. *George Castriota*, was one of the most famous Captaines, that euer fought

I 3 with

The first part

Scander-Beg, with the Turkes, and was otherwise called *Iskander-Beg*, i. the Lord *Alexander*, a name that was giuen him by *Sultan Amurath*, when being his Hostage or Pledge he caused him to bee circumcised at seauen years of age: (for the Turkes at circumcision change the name, as we vse to doe at baptisme.) This man fighting thus with the Turks being in this disarray, had such victories of them as were most worthie of triumph.

Besides all this the Turkes, when they do fight, put more confidence in their Multitude, in the opinion that they haue of *Desirie*, in the noyse of their warrelike instruments, and in the horrible cry of their barbarous shoutings, then they haue in any good order, or in true discipline. And yet many good things they haue, as namely, a Supreme authoritie in their Captaine Generall, an obedience in the souldiers, though now it be somewhat diminished: forces alwayes readie, so that they shall not

Good gouernment among the Turkes.

A fault in Christian Princes.

Good qualities in the Turkes.

need to go about, begging of souldiers, as our Princes doe, who verie oftentimes make more account and better reconing of other mens forces, then they do of their own, and to make a leauie of souldiers, are enforced to euacuate and emptie their treasuries and to consume the greatest part of their time vnprofitably. The Turkes spend their treasure either in matters of greatest importaunce, or in bestowing liberally vpon their souldiers: which is a most sharpe spurre to animate and encourage them to battaile. They neuer attempt any enterprise at a iumpe or vpon a soden. They do not employ their forces in matters of small moment. They vnder-

take

of the Ottoman.

32

take no action, but with order and great militarie preparation: and for the most part they fight not out of season.

And although some be of an opinion, that the Turkes want Engyners, yet it is daily scene, that with *Engyners*, great facilitie and ease they ouerthrowe the greatest fortes and fortresses of the worlde, whereof they make no account at all: for sometimes they will corrupt the enimies officers, with honours, with gifts, and with prouinces, and sometimes they will make breaches into the walles with continuall batteries, working with the mattocke, filling vp the trenches, and other whiles also ouerwhelming Citties, either with huge artificiall mountaynes of earth, or with vndermining: and lastly, disquieting the inhabitants with perpetuall and importunate assaults and neuer giuing ouer the enterprise till it be performed.

Moreover, they do not want any munition, of Bullet, Artillarie, Powder. For Bullet, they alwaies make it when they haue neede of it. For Artillarie, they haue great quantitie of it, at *Constantinople*, at *Pera*, at *Belgrado*, and at *Buda*: the most part of it taken from the Christians. They haue also learned to cast Artillarie: the more shame for vs, who haue not beene contented to transport our arrant cruell enimies out of *Asia* into *Europe* in *Amurathes* time, but haue also become Maisters vnto them in this Arte: and I would to God, that we did not likewise carrie them great store of Armour and weapons besides: nothing regarding or fearing the wrath of God, the excommunication of the Popes, nor the vtter ruine of our selues. And as for Powder, it is made

Bullet
Artillarie.

Powder,
made

The first part

made at *Cairo*, and at *Acque Bianche*. i. the white-waters, (which is a place not farre distant from *Constantinople*:) and elsewhere in great abundance.

Stratagems. The Turkes do also greatly practise militarie stratagemes, or wylie policies in warre, whereby they do vse to mingle deceite with force, according to the commandement of *Mahomet* their law-giuere: neither do they want meanes and ministers, that are cunning and skilfull to practise the same, both because all such, as among them do attend the Arte of warrefare, do endeuour themselues to learne and knowe whatsoeuer is necessarie for the good managing of an employte, and also because fraud and deceite is a thing most proper to the Turke. Much other matter might be set downe touching this poynt: but if any bee desirous to vnderstand more hereof, let him read, (among others that haue written of the Turkish affaires,) the discourses of *Renato Di Lusinge*, Lord *Alimes*, in his booke intituled, Of the beginning, conseruation, & decaying of States.

And now that I haue shewed you the Land-Forces of the Ottoman Empire, it is also verie fit and conuenient, that I shoulde likewise shew you, the forces thereof by Sea.

§. XLII.

*Storehouses
for shipping
Asia.*

THe great Turke hath many *Tersani*, that is to say Arsenales or Storehouses for shipping. The Arsenal or Storehouse of *Sinopoli* neere to *Trabisonda* is one of the best. At *Constantinople*, there are a hundred & thirtie seauen roomes in one vaulte, and

of the Ottoman.

33

and at *Midia* and *Achilo* they haue space enough to make some if they will. Besidesthat, the Turkes do vse also to make Galeyes in such places, where they may most commodiously haue timber for them: the charge and care whereof they lay most commonly vpon the *Raijari* or *Raiji*, that is to say, the Captains of the said Galeyes. Moreouer they haue great abundance of timber in many places, & specially in the golfe of *Nicomedia* in *Asia*, ouer against *Constantinople*: and in the mountaines of the *Ducagini*, from whence they may conuay it by the Riuers *Drino* unto *Alessio* a territorie of *Albania*: in which prouince also they haue some quantitie at *Velona*, and at *Pologna*, which is verie famous by *Augustus*, who was there studying, when *Cesar* was killed.

The great Turke hath also an Arsenal or storehouse in *Africa* at *Suez*, in the mouth of the Red Sea, with certaine Galeyes, which were made heretofore against the *Portingales*, for the enterprise of *Diu* & *Ormuz*: but it is of small reconing because in that country there is no store of timber, and to bring it from the portes of *Bithynia* and *Caramania* to *Cairo* by the riuer *Nilus*, and so to *Suez* vpon Camels is a matter of great difficultie and expence.

§. XLIII.

IT is most certaine and true that the Turkes do put their timber to worke, so ill seasoned, so greene, & so fallen without any obseruatiō of the course of the *Moone*, that their Galleyes cannot proue very good & durable: and the rather, because they vse to make Timber and
Gallies.
Their Gallies
not very good.
K them

The first part

them for the most part in great hast: besides that the houels or vaults, that are made to couer them, are not so well fitted, nor safe from the raine.

Pitch hard
and soft.
Tallow.
Hempe not
much.
Sayles why
scant.

The Sultane
Ladies Ga-
leons.

Nailles scant.

Martiners

Gallyflaues.

They haue Pitch, both hard and soft from *Velona*, and from *Rifano* in the golfe of *Cathare*: the one out of the mines, the other from the trees. And tallowe they want not, by reason of the great abundance of Beeses and Muttons, that are in those countreys. But they haue not hempe enough, and so by consequence they are not well prouided of Sayles: and so inuch the worse, because the Sultane Ladies (who haue thirtie Galeons of a thousand & fve hundred tunne a peece, and eightene great Hulkes, which they send into *Alexandria* with diuers marchandise,) do draw out of the Arsenal, with the good liuing and pleasure of the Grand-Turke, sayl & chor-dage, asmuch as is requisite for the seruice of their said vessels. Besides that the officers, who haue the charge of the said Sayls, & such other like furniture for ships, do keepe them but ill fauouredly and lend them out easily for gaine.

The Turks do also want nayls, so that very often in stead therof, they are fain to vse sharp woodde pins.

Of Mariners they haue great store. They entayne the *Asappi* principally to serue them in Sea actions. And if they should happen to want any, they would compell the *Candians* to serue in their Galeyes (for there is alwaies a great multitude of them in *Constantinople*) & other *Gracians* that are their subiects, which do wholy attend that trade. To this purpose also they keepe many boies exercised that way, in their watch-Gallyes, in their shippes, and other boats

of the Ottoman.

34

Boats. But gally-flaues they want which is a matter of great consideration: for unprofitable are their Gallies, without people to row them. And neither will the Christian flaues be enough for that seruice, nor yet those that are supplied out of *Barbarie*. Besids that the Turkes do not make any flaues of the *Tartarians*, or the *Persians*, nor of the *Georgians*, because they will not admit them into their militarie gouernment, which wholly resteth in the handes of their flaues, as it hath bin somewhat touched heretofore, and more at large shall be hereafter in the third part of this treatise. Sometimes they will also command the *Asappi* to go and serue for Gally flaues, as a base kind of people and of no worth: and sometimes others of the countrey: for whose stipend and wages there was applied in times past, an *Auariz*, that is to say, an exaction layd vpon the christians of *Europe*, which amounted to the summe of three hundred thousand Cecchinoes or Duckats: but now it is em-ployed vpon other land-matters. In their great necessities they vse also some of the *Armenians*, some of the *Jewes*, and some of the Christians, euen by force & compulsion, as namely *Cicala* did in the last yeare of his generalship. The *Spabi* likewise go for souldiers in the Gallyes, that are kept for the defence & safegard of the Islandes of *Barbarie*, and other places, but without any other pay, sauing only the profite of their *Timari*: and thereupon they growe wonderfull greedie to robbe and spoyle. If they make a fleete of a greater number of Gallyes then ordinary, (which may be about some thirtie,) they will send some *Giannizzaries* into them.

An *Auariz*, or
exaction rai-
sed vpon the
Christians for
the mainte-
nance of Gal-
ley-flaues.

K 2

They

The first part

They make great abundance of Bisket, at *Velona* at *Lepanto*, at *Negroponte*, at *Volo* in the gulfe of *Salamicci*, whereth the wheate is brought and conuayed, that is gathered out of *Macedonia* and *Seruia* in *Zataracs* or *Lighters* by the Riuer *Vardaro*, which in old time was called *Auxius*.

And thus much let be sufficient to haue spoken of the Turkes forces by land and by sea. But for as much as according to the opinion of some auncient Captaines, Gold is the Sinewes of warre, and (as it were) the Spirite and Soule, that quickeneth and giueth life to an Armie: I will briefly adioyne hereunto some matter touching the Ottoman riches: Wherin a great parte of the Forces of that Empire and of other principalities doth consist.

§. XLIV.

First, if wee doe consider the value and account of the *Timari*, it is manifest and playne that the Great Turke, is the richest Prince, that is vpon the earth: because hauing bounden vnto him by his *Timari*, moe then three hundred persons, to serue him in his warres, without any interest, hindraunce or charge of his owne, it may easilly bee perceyued, what a great matter it would bee for him to maintayne so many Souldiours, with his owne pay.

Moreouer, the great Turke hath two *Hafnads*, (or as many do pronounce it with a stronger aspiratio, *Gafnads*) that is to say treasuries whereof the one is called

of the Ottoman.

35

called the outward or comon treasury, the other the inward or priuate Treasurie. The former hath about some nine or ten millions of yearly reuenue, which is wholy imployed in the expences that are needfull and necessarie for the state. The later is exceedingly rich, by reason of the many and great giftes or presents, which are giuen to the grand-Turke by sundrie Princes, and specially by the Christians, by his owne seruiters and subiects, and by all such as haue any thing to deal with him, not permitting any person to come before his presence with empie handes, for hee doth attribute that, which indeede turneth to his chiefeſt gaine, rather to be a ſigne of his great pompe and Maiestie. And truly if yee shall well confider the nature of the whole generation of the Turkes, ye ſhall find all of them to attend none other thing, but onely to gather that they may giue it afterwarde to the great Turke: ſo that by this meanes, all the riches of that large Empire doe paſſe through their handes, as it were through water-pipes, into the huge Ocean of their Emperours couetousneſſe.

Into the ſame priuate *Hafnad*, or Treasurie, there runneth also the yearlye reuenue of *Mifzir* (for ſo the Arabians and Turkes doe call the ancient *Mephis*, that is to ſay, *Cairo*, by a corruption from the Hebrew worde *Mizrahim*) which reuenue amoungt to the ſumme of aboue one Million. There runneth thither alſo, the yearlye value of all the inheritances of the riĉeſt persons in all his Empire, whose heire he maketh himſelfe to bee, euen at his owne pleasure. For all the wealth of thoſe, which

K 3

Inheritances.

Cairo.

The first part

Confiscations, fines, &c.

Mynes.

Tribute of the Christians.

Tribute of the Turks them selves.

Treasure left.

bear the title of slaves, doth wholly depende vpon his supreeme will and disposition. Thither come likewise, all confiscations and forfeitures, all fines and amercements (which are verie many) all the goods of such as are condemned by law, all the Revenue that is gathered of Custome and Impost : all the rent of the Salt-pits, and the Tithe and tents of all prayes that are taken by land or by sea, of all cattell, and of all Haruests in the fields: the profit also of the Mines, whereof there are verie many in *Seruia*, (insomuch as it is called, *Prouincia d' Argento*, i. the Prouince of Siluer) in *Bosna* about *Iaiza*, in *Madonia*, and elsewhere. All which ioyntly togither, amounteth to a most huge quantitie of golde more or lesse, according to the greedie auarice of the Prince, and to the diligence, or rather insaciablenes and extortiōn of his officers.

Besides all this, the Turke doth also leuie a tribute vpon the Christians, which is a *Sultayne* vpon euerie Head, or Poll of them, assoone as they are aboue *xiiii. yeares olde*: which tribute is now encreased to a higher rate, by occasion of this present warre. There is likewise a certaine redemption of that, which is payed by the Turkes according to the rate offiue and twentie *Aspres a pece*, and is called a Gift, because it is exprefſely forbidden by their law that the Turkes shoulde take any tribute of the Turkes.

Lastly, the now liuing great Turke, did finde in this priuate *Hafnad* or treasurie, great store of gold, but not in that excessive quantitie, as some haue bin bolde to write, which was gathered togither by his father,

of the Ottoman.

36

father, who was very auaricious and greedie beyond all measure, and as insatiable and carefull to hoarde vp, as he was miserable and sparing in spending and giuing. He was of the minde that he would sell even The courteous nesse of Amurath the third. the flowers of his owne Gardeines : hee payed no debts : he gaue nothing, or at least verie little to his souldiers : a thing that was farre different from the custome of that Empire. To bee short, he was most respectiue and heedie in all his expences as well ordinary as extraordinarie, those only excepted which he laide out vpon his women, who (although they were his slaves) yet was it his pleasure, that when they departed from his entertainement, and embracement, they should bee greatly enriched, and well furnished with Iewels.

To all these things before rehearsed, there may Yearly Tributes of Christian princes to the great Turke. be added a matter, which without teares cannot bee remembred, and that is, the tributes (or rather to vse a more modest name for it, the *Benevolences and Gratiuities*) which the Christian Princes do vsually give to the great Turke. The memorie whereof ought to enkindle, yea and enflame them with a most iust disdaine and indignation against so baibarous and vniust a tyrant, and to cause them, that (as indeede they doe in their consciences acknowledge it to bee more profitable for Christendome, and honourable for themselues:) so they would all ioyne togither with one consent to spend the same money for the glorie of Christ, and for there owne safetie.

§ XLV.

The Emperor **T**he Christian Emperour payed vnto the Turke The Emperor for Hungarie, and to haue peace with him (if I do well

The first part

well remember my selfe) ffortie and fve thousande Dallars.

The Vaiuode of Moldauia. The Vaiuode of Moldauia paith one and thir-
tie loades of *Aspres*, or little lesse. A hundred
thousand *Aspres* make a loade, which at the time of
the imposition make two thousand Crownes, euerie
Crowne being worth fiftie *Aspres*, which is now
worth more then a hundred. And besides, he payeth
also to the *Tartarian* twentie Cart-loades of honie,
with foure Oxen in euerie Cart, and fiftie Mares be-
sides. but it may be that by some new composition
he payeth now somewhat more or lesse.

The Vaiuode of Walachia. The Vaiuode of *Walachia*, before it was at the de-
uotion of the *Transiluanian* Prince, paied fiftie loads.
Such is the information that I haue had from such
as haue scene the booke of *Moldavia*, and *Walachia*:
and therefore I do differ somewhat from those, that
haue written otherwise hereof.

The prince of Transiluania. The Prince of *Transiluania*, payed to the *Turke*
before this present warre 15000. *Cecchinoes* or *Duc-
kers*.

The state of Raguzi. The state of Venice. The state of *Raguzia* payeth. 12500. *Cecchinoes*.
The state of *Venice*, for the Iland of *Zante* (*i. Za-
cynthus*) 1000. *Cecchinoes*: as *Selēm* also chalengeth a
certaine summe of money, before it was bereaued
of the Kingdome of *Cyprus*, because the *Ottoman*
Empire was somewhat entered into the Soldanes
accounts and reckonings.

The Moscovite. The *Moscouite* also gratifieth the *Tartarian* for
Taurica, to auoyde the incursions, which the *Tarta-
rians* are wont to make into his Countrey, either of
themselues, or at the instance of the *Turke*.

The

of the Ottoman.

37

The *Polack* payed to the *Turke* in the yeare 1591. so
many furs of *Sables*, as were worth 25000. crownes
of gold: but it is not a yearly tribute, as some haue
written. Indeed hee giueth to the *Tartarian* euerie
yeare a certaine summe of mony, to buy *Scimitarres*,
and apparell withall, by an auncient capitulation or
composition, as it is read in the Histories of *Polonia*.

I haue noted also the giftes which some Princes
do bestow vpon the *Tartarian*, which although they
began at the first indeed, before the *Turke* had any
thing to doe with the *Tartarian*, are yet still conti-
nued by the said Princes, principally to please the
Turke.

There be also certaine tributes and giftes, which
the Princes of *Africa*, and of *Arabia*, and the *Ge-
rani*, and others do vse to giue, but I wil omit them,
because they are not of any moment, nor serue any
thing to this present purpose.

The Prince of Africa, Arabia, and Ge-
rani. Finally, there be also many Rewardes and Gra-
tuities, which the foresayd Princes do bestow extra-
ordinarily vpon the officers of that barbarous Prince
to keepe them to bee their friends: and which vpon
diuerse and sundry occasions they bestow also vpon
himselfe, either to holde him in friendshipe, or to pa-
cifie his rage and furie (which is sometimes eager in
deed, and somtimes but counterfaite) or else they
giue it for a certaine Ceremonie: because (as I haue
signified before) he doth account this kinde of pro-
fite to be verie honourable vnto him. Besides that
all such as desire Offices and Dignities, or returne
from the gouernments of Prouinces, or from some
notable enterprize, do bestow vpō him (as it were by
bond

Gratuities ex-
traordinary to
the Turke and
his Officers.

L

The second part

bond and dutie) the godliest and most precious things which they haue gotten : Neither is there any other cause why his pleasure is that all the presentes, which are offered vnto him, should thus openly and in publike view be presented to his owne presence , but onely with this barbarous pride and ostentation to enflame and prouoke both his owne subiects & strangers to bestow the more vpon him.

The end of the first Booke.



The second part.

Wherein is treated of the purposes and Designments which the Ottoman Princes haue towards other princes : Of the cause of this present warre in Hungarie, the beginning and proceeding thereof : wherein for your better understanding, the originall of the said warre shall be fetched, euen from Amurath, the father of this now liuing Mahomet.

Now that we haue seene the nature and conditions of *Mahomet*, the heade and chiefe of this *Ottoman Empire*, and what are the members , strength, and forces of this most monstrous bodie, as

I

of the Ottoman.

38

I may call it : fit and conuenient it is : that for the full and perfect knowledge thereof, we should goe about to search the purposes and designments, which the said *Mahomet* hath against other Princes, and specially against the Princes Christian: to the end we may the better vnderstand the true causes of this present warre,togither with the beginning and proceedings thereof. But forasmuch as this warre began, euen in the time of *Amurath*, father to the now liuing Emperour, it will be necessarie for our better intelligence to speake somewhat of him, and to fetch the true originall of the said warre euen from thence: wherewithall there shal be also discouered vnto you more plainly , all the greatest interests and dealings which hee hath with the rest of the Princes in the world.

§ I.

And to begin the same accordingly *Amurath*,
the Lord and Emperour of the Turkes father
to the now liuing *Mahomet*, was a prince (of a Ma-
hometane) verie tollerable and discrete. He was a
zealous obseruer of that most vaine superstition of
the *Mushaphum*,(for so the Turkes call the Booke of
their law , as the Arabians tearme it the *Al-koran*:
that is to say most wickedly , as it were by excellen-
cie, *m'ypaqm*, the Scripture , as though there were
none other Scripture like it: euen as the Iewes and
Hebrewes call the holy Scriptures,*Kara*.) He took
great delight also in reading the Hystories of his
predecessours , as *Selim* the first did the Hystories

L 2

of

The nature
and condi-
tions of Amu-
rath.
The name of
the Turkes
Law-booke.

The second part

of Alexander the great, and of *Julius Cesar*: and because he was so studious in Philosophie, he was called by the Turkes in mockage, *Bongi*, as *Baazet* the second was also called in the same respect. Hee was no drinker of wine, as his father *Selen* was. In the pleasures of sensualitie, which are so familiar and tolerable among the Turks, he was rather continent, the otherwise, especially in that most abominable sin of lecherie, and chiefly for many yeares before the end of his life. Moreouer, if a man that is a niggard & avaricious, may be called a louer of iustice, he was a great louer of that iustice which is known amōg the barbarians: very careful & desirous he was likewise to understand al the affairs of other princes, but aboue all other things, most exact & perfitt in the knowledge of his owne estate: infomuch as he had a perticular memoriall of all his busynesse, of all his reuenues ordinarie and extraordinarie, and of all his expences, which he kepr in a booke appointed by him for that purpose, and layd continually vpon a little table in his owne priue Chamber, and came (as it were) by inheritance to the now great Turke, euen as that of *Augustus* came to *Tiberius* the Emperour. And it may be peraduenture, that by reason of these his too-diligent occupations and busynesses, or rather indeed by his naturall inclination, he was for the most part verie full of melancholie: which besides that it made him somewhat still and sparing of speech, and oftentimes irksome and tedious to himselfe, it also procured him to be exceedingly suspitious of any matter: so that to lighten and quicken himselfe, hee did vse sometimes to take *Opium*: for the Turkes do hold

Why Amurath was called Bongi.

Why he did sometimes take Opium.

of the Ottoman.

39

hold opinion, that the said Simple or Drugge doth breed a good colour, and reioyce the heart, as also that he who hath once eaten of it, cannot any more abstaine from it. He entertained likewise in his *Serraglio*es many Dwarffes and many dumbe persons, whom hee would cause to fight togither one with another, to the end hee might take some pleasure in the sight of so vaine a pastime. Hee made warre rather for religion and exercise of his people, then for that he was giuen to warre by Nature: and that also he folowed not by himselfe, but alwayes by his Officers. For he would still glorie to himselfe, that hee had enlarged the confines of his Empire, euen as farre as the *Caspian sea*, only by his owne wit and aduise, and by the execution and employte of his saide Captaines: a matter which his predecessors could neuer performe or bring to passe in their owne persons. He warred for the space of fifteene or sixteene yeares with *Mahomet Codabend* king of *Persia*, sonne to *Sha Tamas*, who was the sonne of *Ismael*: and with *Abas*, that liueth at this day, whom some doe falsly call the *Miriza*: for *Miriza* is the proper title of the eldest sonne to the king of *Persia*, called *Sophi*, but is not in deed the title of the king himself. He was wout to say that he had fully resolued with himselfe neuer to cōclude peace with him; vntil he had takē *Casbin*, which now is the seate royall of the *Persian* kinges: The true causes why hee warred with the *Persians*,

What Miriza is.

L 3

The

The second part

The other cause was to ruinate and utterly destroy the Sepulchre of Arduelle, father to Ismael, the Authour of the Persian sect or religion: who was called Sophi, either of the Greeke worde σοφης (that is to say wise) as though he had beeene discended from the auncient Magi, or Wise-men of Persia: or because he was accounted and esteemed to be a Wise-man, (as also for the same reason Sempronius was so called) or else of the Arabian worde Sophi, which signifieth woull, because all the Persians doe weare a Tulpante on their heades, not of verie fine linnen cloath as the Turkes doe, but (to make shew of greater religion) made of Woll, died into a red colour, wherevpon they are by the Turkes tearm'd in mockage, Kefelbassi, that is to say, Red-heades, or Red-Cappes: that thereby they might make a difference from the Tartarians of Zegatai, in times past called the Bactriani, and dwelling beyond the Caspian sea, who because they professe themselues to be of the right and true discent of Mahomet, doe vse to weare it of a greene colour, and thereupon are called Ieschilbassi, i. Greene Cappes.

Now by the way: A Tulpante, and a Tocca is all one, and signifieth that Globe or Sphere, full of Circles, great and small, which are in the many turnings and wreathings of those Linnen Rolles, which the Gracians of this time do call αριθμον, and serueth them both for a Cap, and a Hood. And indeed properly it should be called a Turbante, of the round shape thereof, tearm'd by the Greeks νῶνος growing sharpe in the top like unto a Sugerloafe, or a Cypres tree, as the Turkes were wont to weare it at the first: but now they weare it more round. And thereupon it may be peraduenture

Why Ismael
called Sophi.

The Persians
called Kefel-
bassi.

The Tarrari-
ans of Zegatai
called Ieschil-
bassi.

What a Tur-
bante is: and
what it may
signifie.

of the Ottoman.

40

ture called in the holy Scriptures Pomum (that is to say, an Apple) namely in the 79. Psalme, where King Dauid bewayling the taking of the Citie Ierusalem, sayth, The Temple of the Lord was giuen into the custodie of Apples, according to the vulgar and common translation, which place certaine Writers not without some reason haue interpreted to be ment of the Turkes. And so likewise it may be, that not of Constantinople, but of the Persian Kingdome, the Red-Apple is to be understood, which the Ottoman Emperour shall bring into his subiectiōn, before he be utterly subdued by the syorre of the Christians, as is to be red in the Turkish Oracle or Prophecie (if so it may be called) and is now a long time knowne to every man, and An exposition of a Turkish prophecie. is by divers men diversly interpreted Others there are, that would expound the Turbante to be a Syrbole or token of Fortitude: whereby those that do weare the same should be admonished, that when they go to the warres they shold not thinke to retorne; but thereing gloriously to die, whiles they may remember that they carry with them the Syndon or winding sheete, wherein they vse to wrap their dead carcasses. The Giannizzaries do not weare the Turbante, The Jannizzaries but a Zercola, which is of white Felt, and is iumpe of the ties Zarcola, same fashion and shape, as may be seene in diuerse pictures, to make a difference from the rest of the Turks, that weare it of a red colour.

§. II.

And now to retorne againe. At the last Amurath Why Amu-
rath was con-
tend to be at
and so were his people also, of so long a warre, and
therefore he might be well contented with this pa-
cification
Persians.

The second part

cification, considering especially that hee had conquered so much Countrey, and atchieued so great glorie withall. Moreouer he thought also, that by ths meanes hee might the more soundly establish his state, and better secure the new Inhabitants, which he had planted in his new conquered countreyes, by distributing among them all the *Timari*, that were to be raysed thereof, and by building diuerse fontes therein, which should be cited and sealed in such maner as one of them might easilly helpe and succour the other.

S. II I.

VVHiles Amurath thus enioyed this peace, from which as being a man giuen to stude and Melancholie, he did not of himselfe greatly abhorre, he was counselled and aduised by his *Visiers* to renue the warre.

Now these Visiers are the chiefe counsellers of warre, and of estate: and the councell or assembly of these men, is called by the Turkes Diuano, as hath beeene before declared, and not Capi, that is to say, the Porta, which properly is the Court, wherein is also in diuerse other thinges the Turkes do imitate and follow the Persians, who (as ye may read in Xenophon) did call the Court by that name.

The reasons wherby they moued & aduised him to renue the warre, were these. Namely, that great Empires & states cannot be maintained without the helpe of force and armes: that as long as the common wealth of *Rome* kept warres with the *Carthage-nians*,

of the Ottoman.

41

nians, and the Emperours of Rome in Germanie, that Empire lasted and continued. That so likewise had the *Ottoman* Emperours done in times past, who doe not holde the end of warre to bee peace, as the Princes of Christendome, and other weake princes doe, but they take the onely ende of warre to bee warre, whereby the Turkes haue not onely amplified and enlarged their Empire to that huge greatness, wherein now it is, but haue also kept their subiects occupied and busied: and so haue diuerted them from ciuill seditions and insurrections, which for the most part are bred & nourished by ease and idlenesse. To be short, that the subiects, whiles they continue in peace, some grow to be cowards, some apply themselves too greedily to trades and traffike, and some to spoyling and robberie, insomuch that thereby there will be vtterly lost the knowledge of the Sea-warres, which hath now a long time beeene almost abandoned, and of the land-warre also, if for any long space they should cease to make warres. And consequently they should want Captaines, and valiant or hardie Souldiers, because the onely vse of war doth inure men to become good wartiours, and maketh them exceedingly courageous. And certaine it is, that matters which are atchieued and gotten, are preserued by the same meanes whereby they be gotten.

Besides these Visiers and Bassaes, that laboured to perswade him hereunto, in regard of their owne interest and benefite, especially the two concurrents and opposites *Sinan* and *Ferat*, who without warres were held in no great credite, or account, nor could enrich

M.

enrich

Who the Visiers be.

What the Porta is.

The reasons of the Visiers to moue Amurath to make warre.

The second part

enrich themselues according to the greedie desires
of the Barbarians : their were also the Agentes of
Fraunce, of England, and of the Prince of Geilan,
which endeououred to perswade the same, by such
reasons, as shall be tolde you in due place.

§ IIII.

The reasons
why Amurath
would not
resolute vpon
warre.

Bvt Amurath would not resolute vpon any thing: not because he was not perswaded to make war, but because hee was not throughly certified, what aduantage would grow vnto him by mouing war, rather against one prince then against another: & so much the rather, for that the *Visiers* did differ in their feuerall counsailes and aduises among themselues. And for as much as their sundrie opinions did comprehend the chiefest and most principall interests of the world and specially of Christendom : I thought with my selfe, that it woulde bee a matter not displeasing to such as willingly shal read this discourse, to relate them all in particular, and with such good order and facilitie, as the reports themselues, and the pronunciation of that barbarous tongue will suffer me. And so by that meane I shall give you a more full and certaine knowledge of the *Ottoman* affaires, and therewithall note also vnto our Princes the purposcs and designements of that tyrant, not onely to the ende that they might in time looke about them, and bethinke themselues of fit remedies for the same, but also the sooner resolute, valiantly to bende themselues togither in one, for the vanquishing and ouerthrow of him.

V.

A note for
Christian
Princes.

of the Ottoman.

42

§ V.

THeir opinions were eight in number. The first: The seuerall that in any case the warre should be renued opinions of the *Visiers*. the gaynst the Persian. The second: that they should rather bende their forces against the king of *Fez*, and *Morocco*. The third: against the Isle of *Malta*. The fourth: agaynst the king of Spaine. The fift: against the state of Venice. The sixt: agaynst Italie. The seuenth: agaynst Polonia. And lastly, the eight against the Emperours.

§ VI.

THe reasons of their seuerall opinions were these. The first opinion, to moue warre against Persia; and the reasoun thereof And first, touching the renuing of the warre against *Persia*(a kingdom which the Turks comprise vnder the name of *Azemia*:) they argued, that when soever the king should see the great Turk entangled in other enterprizes, he wold surely break the peace, as well for the recoverie of his Country, which was lost with small honour & credite, as also to be renueged at one time or other, of all the olde grieves and iniuries that he had receyued of the *Ottoman* Emperours. That hee should be prouoked thereunto and assisted therin by the Christian Princes, and specially by the king of Spaine, who could verie wel doe it by the way of the *Indies*, and by sending vnto him (as at sundry other times he had done) engineers, Gunners, and such other helpe. That the Countrey was not yet well letted, the fortresses were new, and

M. 2

the

The second part

the Inhabitants(lately planted) in great danger, and somewhat too farre off, to be relieued in time. That if the Persians would do nothing else, but ransacke and forrage the Champaine, the said Inhabitantes should be compelled and inforced to yeeld and giue place, vnlesse they would perish for hunger. That not to archieue or obtaine, but to prosecute and follow a victorie, is the true glorie. That the Turke should take good heede, not to offend the great prophet *Mahomet*, nor to moue him to indignation or wrath, considering that he had obtained greater victories agaynst the enemies of his Religion, then euer his predecessors had obtained in former times: and therefore it was fit and conuenient, and it was also the dutie of a religious and thankfull prince, not to omit the iniuries that were done both to God and man. There was added to this, that *Vsbech-Han* had voluntarily offered to serue him in this warre, and so had the prince of *Geilan* also.

Who Vsbech-Han is. This Vsbech-Han, is the Prince of those Tartarians, that dwell at the furthest ende of Persia, in that part which the Turkes do call at this day Bahera, in olde time Baetra, What Tartarians are called and are called Ketzic-Balsi, because they weare Caps covered with felt. It is not long ago since the said Vsbech died, and left behinde him a sonne, who may now be about some twelue yeares of age. Geilan, is also a Countrey more toward the East of the Cappian sea.

Moreover, that he need not to make any doubt of victorie, considering the good successe that he hath had heretofore. That hee had no cause to feare their Harquebuses: for they had but few, and the Turkes can better handle them then the Persians: nor yet their

of the Ottoman.

43

their horses, although they were of the Arabian and Caramanian race, the reliques of *Amurath* the second, for they had many times and often bin put to flight for verie cowardise. And lastly, that hee could not doubt, least the *Gurgini* (so doe the Turkes call the *Georgiani*, in times past the *Iberi*) should make any stirre in aide and fauour of the Persians. For part of them are his owne Subiects, and vnder the iurisdiction of the Bassaes of *Teflis*, and of other places thereabouts, after they were made *Bassalucches* by *Mustapha*: part also of them are his tributaries: and it is well knowne, that the rest are contented to liue vnder their Lordes, *Simon* and *Alessandro*, without attempting to seek better fortunes, but to defend their owne Countrie. Which although it be but small, and not verie hard to be kept and defended, yet is it verie strong by situation, and almost vnpassible, for the Mountaines, for the Woods, and for the straite places that compasse it about.

§ VII.

To touching the second opinion, which was for the bending of their forces against the *Siriffe* in Africa, it was thus debated. That it was a great dis-honour to the Ottoman Empire, that they had not as yet ouerthrowne and subdued those Moores. That it was as great a shame, that they had so small a portion in Africa, considering that it was the third part of the world, and being so neare vnto Italie, did so greatly vexe and trouble the Romanes. That *Algier* and *Tunise* would neuer be secure, nor the Subiects

The 2. opinion to make war vpon the king of Fez and Morocco, and the reasons thereof.

M 3

and

The second part

and Sea-rouers thereof satisfied, vntill they had gotten the full rule and dominion of that kingdom. That if they wholly reduce into their power and possession the Cape of *Aguero*, and the Hauen of *Araza* or *Laract* (which indeede is situate without the straite, and not within it as some haue written) places verie fit and conuenient for the English, that get many booties in those seas, as also for diuerse others both friends and enemies to the Moores, the Turkish nauigation should be thereby the more secured. That this king of the Moores, although he be a Mahometane, and a Tributarie to the Ottoman Empire, yet verie lately he had held secrete intelligence with the King of Spaine, and also with the knights of *Malta*, who by meane thereof were like to haue taken *Tripoli*: and that hee had likewise maintained and assisted the insurrection of *Marabut*, and of his successour. That though he were mighty for men, yet he was poore in mony. And lastly that although the Spaniards do holde in Africa, *Maraſchebir*, *Oran*, the *Pegnon*, *Tanger*, *Arſilla*, *Mizagan*, and *Centa*, or *Septa*, and therefore may combine themselues with the Moores to the great damage of the Turkes: yet notwithstanding they might bee brideled with an Armada of shippes, and by passing also if need were, euen into Spaine. And withall, that the examples of *Tunis*, and *Goletta*, which was held to be impregnable, and yet was taken by *Sinan*, to his exceeding glorie, were so fresh in memorie, that they could not choose but remember them.

The cape of
Aguero.
The hauen of
Araza.

The rebellion
of Marabut.

Certaine pla-
ces which the
Spaniards
hold in Africa.

Tunis and
Goletta.

§ VIII.

of the Ottoman.

44

§ VIII.

TOuching the third opinion, which was for the sending of an Armada to conquer the Isle of *Malta*, it was said: that considering the Mahometanes, both in their traffikes, and also in their pilgrimages, as they went to *Mecca*, received most notable losses by the Gallies of those knightes: the great Turke ought to commaund that in any case order might be taken to secure that voyage, not onely for religious sake, but also to bee auenged of the trespasses and wrongs alreadie done vnto them, or rather to recouer the glorie of *Soliman*, who in vain, and without any good successe attempted to surprise it. That all the Subjects cried out and Exclaimed for the enlarging and deliuerie, some of their friends, & some of their kinsfolkes that were there in captiuitie: saying, that so did their forefathers, when they spoyled and deprived the same knightes of the Isle of *Rhodes*, the chiefe fortresse and defence of the Christians in the East. Moreover, that they deserued due chastisement also, aswell because they had furnished those that rebelled against the grand Turke in Africa, with munition of warre: as also because they endeouored to surprize *Modone* on a sodaine.

The third op-
tion to con-
quer *Malta*,
and the reason
thereof.

Pilgrimage to
Mecca.

The Isle of
Rhodes.

§ IX.

TOuching the fourth opinion, which was to moue wares against the King of Spaine, it was said: that if the Ottoman Empire were determined

The fourth op-
pinion against
the King of
Spaine, and
the reasons
thereof.

The second part

termined to attaine the Monarchie of the whole world, it was not possible to be atchieued, vnlesse the mightines of that Prince were first weakened, who without al doubt was the greatest both for state and riches that Christendome had. That it could not be feared least the said King of Spaine should assault Algieri, for that it was now a great deale better fortifiēd then it was in the time of *Crai* the Spaniard: (for so by a Sclauinetearme, the Turks of the Court do call Charles the fist.) That although Spaine should take courage to enterprise such a matter, in regarde of the losses which it receyuth continually by the Pyrates of Africa, yet it would be restrained from so doing for verie feare, least it should bring an Arma-
da of enemies into those seas, who might peradventure endomage it greatly. That the Spanish Gallies would not hazard themselues to come into the Le-
uant, because they woulde not bee so fatre from home. Moreouer, that the resolutions of that King, either in regard of his many businelles, or in some other respect are verie slowe. And as it is manifestly seenē by that which they did at *Priuosa*, and *Nauarino*, the Spaniards doe vittery refuse euēn for their owne commoditie and benefite to encounter with the Ottoman forces. That the said King of Spaine walketh with great cōsideration: for (if it be true) in the latter end of the Persian war, he denied to aid the king of Persia, when hee might haue succoured him as before he had done. That although he would peradventure stirre in defence of himselfe, and his state against the Turkish forces, yet he could not so doe in deede: considering that he is so greatly occupied in

the

Algieri.

How the
Turks call
Charles the
fist.

of the Ottoman.

45

the maintenance of Flanders, and recoverie of the How greatly
lowe Countries, which are verie strong both in re- the king of
garde of the Sea floods, and of the many riuers that Spaine may be
are therein: and so much the more troubled hee is, the Moores,
by reason of the obstinate and constant resolution the French, &
of that people, for the preseruation of their libertie the English.
and religion: and likewise in respect of the great en-
mitie which is betweene that king and the Queene
of England, who doth greatly eale that warre, by
troubling him in his state of Portugall, by iintercep-
ting his treasures of the Indies, and by sacking his
kingdomes, as particularly she did at the Groine,
which is a place of verie great importance to annoy
Spaine, to disturbe the nauigation of the Indies,
and also to attempt diuers other places in that other
nauigation of the Ocean. Moreouer, that he was so
farre interessed in the wars of France, that he could
not wholy turne himselfe any whither else. To bee
short: that suppose he be reconciled, and at peace
with the said princes, so that with more safetie and
ease hee might attend this principall enterprise in-
tended against him; yet might the Turke damnifie
him in his Spices and other Marchandizes, yea, and
(if neede were) he might diuert him into the Red-
sea, otherwise called the Persian Gylfe, by meaneis of
the Gallies, that lie so conueniently and commodi-
ously for that purpose at *Suez*: or hee might sur-
prise some good fortresse of his; as was attempted a-
gainst the Portugales for *Dilij* and *Ormuz*; and as
Alfonso d'Albuquerque, the Portuguese Miceroy in the *Alfonso d'Al-*
Indies, thought once to haue done, when he meant
to haue stollen away the bones of *Mahomet*, by a
sodaine

N

sodaine

How the king
of Spaine may
be diuerted to
the Persian
Gylfe.

The second part

sodaine incursion into the Countrey with certaine light horsemen, euen as farre as Mecca: and as it was done at other times, while the Soldans reigned: and also as *Trajan* the Emperour was minded to haue done in his time. Againe, that the passages into Africa might be much troubled, especially if the Turke wouldest vpon the Spanish coast in the Mid-land sea, which would bee a great contentment to the subiects, who doe continuallie make humble petition and supplication for it, as well in regard of the safetie of their traffique and pilgrimages, as also that the poore Moores might once bee deliuered from the dominion of the Spaniard, as *Selim* at the least was perswaded to haue done. And so much the rather, for that the said Moores, who are now multiplied into a great number, although they keepe close both for feare, & also for their traffique, whereby they are growen to bee verie rich, yet as well by nature, as also for Religion, doe beare a mortall hatred against the Spaniards. Moreover, that this course might easily bee performed by reason of the conuenience of the hauens in Africa, which lie neer at hand: and also because the said Princes of Fraunce and England, haue offered to continue their warres, with him: the King of France, by disquieting him in the parts of *Nauarra*, for the challenge which hee hath thereunto: and the Queenes of England (as it hath beeene said) not onely by letting vpon him in the West Indies, and in the Ocean, which she may doe both by Netherland, by West, but also by raising againe some new stirres in Portugall, where there doth not want great store of Mal-contents. For that people

The Moores
wearie of the
Spanish go-
vernment.

the Ottoman.

46

people doth thinke, that with the losse of their last king, they haue also lost all their wealth and prosp-
ritie: because that as vnder his gouernment they grew rich by the peace that he intartained with the said princes of France and England: so vnder the Spani-
ards dominion they do find, that by the warres they liue in continuall perils and daunger. Againe, there be many banished and discontented persons, not onely of the kingdome of Portugall, but also of the kingdome of Aragon in France, in England, and in Constantinople, who togither with many Moores, (which also were in Constantinople) haue offered many aydes and helpes both secretly and openly: and haue promised that the enterprise will be verie easie, when so euer Spaine shall be set vpon, especi-
ally if it bee done vpon a sudden. For the greatest part of that kingdome doth want the vse of militarie knowledge: because the people of that Countrey do not applie themselues to armes, neither are there a-
ny ordinarie bands of Souldiers ouer all the realme: and but a small number of horses neither. Moreouer,
that the Subiects, which Spaine sendeth forth into
the Indies, into Flanders, and into Italic, are so ma-
nie in number, as they doe greatly weaken it: yea,
so much, that if occasion should so fall out, it shold
not onely want helpe of their owne, but also shold
stand in need to be reliued with the ayde and assi-
stance of other states that are neere vnto them, and
subiects of the same crowne, who peraduenture
would proue to be of no great good seruice, and so
much the lesse, because they may easily be stopped,
and diuerted some other way.

Spaine not
well exercisid
in militarie
knowledge.

Spaine wan-
teth men.

N 2

X

The second part

S. X.

The fist opinion, to break peace with Venice: & the reasons thereof.

THe fist opinion, was to break the peace with the state of Venice: For this said they, which en- deuoured to perswade the great Turks mind there- unto, rather with apparent reasons, then with such as were true in deede: (though peraduenture, *every man easily believeng that which he desireth*, they might seeme verie probable and likely to the Turkes:) that no enterprise happily would proue lesse hard and difficult then this, as it might be found by the expe- rience and examples of such actions as had passed heretofore: especially seeing the Turkes not many yeares agoe hauing warred with the Venetians, and surprised somewhat of theirs, had receiuied many and great satisfactions at their hands to make peace with them. That the said Common wealth & State of Venice, accounting peace to be the end wherat it shoogeth, it should seeme that the people is time- rous and cowardly, and by their ancient ordinances and customes, do neuer prepare themselves to war, but when they are drawne ynto it by force: that per- aduenture they will think to be ouercome, before they looke for it, as it fell out with them for the king- dome of Cyprus. That if the said state would make resistance by it selfe alone, perhaps it hath not forces sufficient: if ioyned in confederacie with others, it could not performe any great matter in haste, by reason of the many difficulties, that depend upon leagues, and namely of these ual cogitations and interestes, wherewith the Spanish king is now in-

tangled.

The king of Spaine cannot helpe Venice against the Turke.

of the Ottoman.

47

tangled: in regard whereof it was inforced at last to make peace with *Selim*. Moreover, that it was a hard matter, if not impossible, that the said king, being so greatly occupied in his other warres, could at this time ioyne in league with that state: and also that without him all other confederacies, to take warre by Sea, were of no importaunce or consideration. And as for the Pope, though it be very likely, that he will do al that possiblē he can do, to keepe the Christian princes from annoying the said state, but rather will aduertise and admonish them to ayde an succour it: yet the most that he can doe himselfe is onely that he may yeeld it some alsistance, either of moneys, or of some Ecclesiasticall profites, or else peraduenture hee may send to ioyne with their Armada, his ffe Gallies, which togither with the Gal- lies of *Malta*, of *Savoy*, and of *Florence*, can make no mo but twent e in all, at the most. And besides, that the said state of Venice hath not happily that good intelligence, with all the rest of the Christian prin- ciples, which in such a case were needfull for it, (but the Turkes are therein greatly deceiued.) And to be short, seeing it hath spent great store of golde in dis- charging the debtes of the Treasurie, whereinto it had runne by the last warres, and by building many fortresses, it will be found peraduenture not so well prouided and furnished with money. And last- ly, that all that state being verie full of forts, it is im- possible at one time to keepe them all well fenced, and sufficiently strengthned.

But for as much, as it seemed, that the greatest part of the Vifiers did concurre in this opinion, but yet varied a-

mong

What relife
the Pope can
yield to
Venice.

Diversitie of
opinions am-
ong the Bas-
tars, how and
where to an-
noy Venice.

N. 3

The second part

mong themselves, how to attempt this enterprise: I will set downe their differences in particularitie.

Sinan and his death.

He perswadeth to attempt Corfu. Sinan the Albanian, of Topoiano, a town of the San-giaccheship of Preseremo, who died the last yea^r of a naturall death, but peraduenture somewhat discontented, because the warre of Hungary succeeded not according to his mind: (and yet some thinke rather that he died of poysone:) hee perswaded, that *Corfu* shoulde be attempted, vnder the pretence of 3. hundred Duckats a yea^r, due to the Emperiall Chamber of Turkie, euer since the yea^r 1537: for *La Bastia*, because it was yeelded to the *Corfioites* but vpon that condition.

La Bastia.

La Bastia is a w^{ast} and desert place, being under a towne of the Turkes in Epirus, twelve miles right ouer against *Corfu*, neare to the Salt pistes, which are in the Turkes possession at the mouth of the riuier Calamatta: and is the principall port and Staple for the Marchandizes, which come from a great part of Greece, to bee im-barked at *Corfu*.

But in verie deed *Sinan* endeououred to perswade this attempt, because the Fortresse of *Corfu* was thought to be vnuanquishable, both by Nature and by Arte: and hee being exceedingly ambitious to atchieue the name and title of a great Conquerour, was so bold and hardie, especially vpon the exployte which he did at *Goletta*, as to promise to himselfe a verie easie conquest of this also: as in truth hee did not sticke to vaunt that he could performe it, when he passed by *Corfu*, in his victorious returne from the enterprize of *Goletta*.

Ferat, who was called *Carailam*, that is to say, the Blacke

of the Ottoman.

48

Black-Serpent, and died also the last yea^r, being by Ferat Bassa, & Mahomet caused to bee strangled: (how wisely and considerately, I leauue to the iudgement of those that understand matters of state better then I do.) For hee was accused to haue practised intelligence with the Tartarian of Crimo, that he should refuse to come to the Turkish campe, because Ferat himselfe was not Generall thereof: and to haue endeououred also a reconciliation for Michael the Vainode, and the Trasiliuaniā, both at one time, by giuing the court to vndersta^d that they had not rebelled for any hattred which they caried indeed against the Turks, but rather vpon an indignation conceiued agaynst *Sinan*.

Ferat degraded. Al which he laboured onely of purpose to bring the said *Sinan* into disgrace, whom hee helde to bee his most capitall enemie, because hee was made *Maful*, that is to say, hee was degraded, for the tumult and stirre that fel out betweene the *Iannizzaries* and the *Spahoglanes*, at the circumcision of the now-reigning Turke. This *Ferat* aduised, that *Catharo* should bee conquered, because he thought that the saide Fortresse did keepe Castell *Nuono* (as it were) in bondage, and that it was the principall key of *Dalmatia*, of the Adriatike Sea, and of *Venice*. And also that hee being borne at *Aironici*, a Castell of *Albania*, could verie well know eu'en from his yongest yea^res, that thesaide Fortresse, which is famous in that prouince, was of so great importance, as in truth it is.

He aduertiseth to attempt Catharo. I haue somewhat intarged this Discourse of the particulars touching *Sinan* and *Ferat*, because I haue had occasion many times (as I shall also haue hereafter) to make mention of them, as the most principall men in this Empire.

The second part

pire, and in this warre.

Sinan Cicala
perswader to
attempt
Cerego.
Damaratus K.
of Lacedemo-
nians.
Other Bassae
perswade the
attempt of
Nouigrade
and Zara.
The fishings
of Butinbro.

Sinan Cicala, an errant enemie to the state of *Venice*, for the reasons which we haue aboue alledged, he perswaded that *Cerigo* shold bee attempted, for the selfe-lame causes, for which he calleth it the Lanterne of the *Archipelago*, and the spie of the Turkish actions, especially for that it is manifestly perceiued and scene: how the Christians may easily passe ouer into *Morea*, out of this Island. So did *Damaratus* king of the *Lacedemonians*, when he was banished out of his kingdom, aduise and counsell *Xerxes*, that if he would attaine to the Lordship and gouernment of *Greece*, hee must possesse himselfe of this Island which at this time was called *Cythera*.

Other Bassae there were, which held opinion, that to be reuenged of the spoyles and robberies committed by the *Vscocchi* (of whom I will speake somewhat hereafter) and to meete with other their wrongs and iniuries, they should surprize *Nouigrade* and *Zara*: or at the least, that the *Venetians* should be inforced and of necessity constrained by thare means to be bound, to pay al the losses and damages which those rouers and thecues had wrought against the Turkes, both by land and by sea. For the *Venetians* had denied to be bound to make any such recompence, because in the publike Bookes and Registers of *Constantinople*, there was not to bee found any agreement, or any payment for the same, as in truth there was not. The same Bassae also were of opinion, that it were fit the *Venetians* should bee spoyled and bereaued of their Fishings at *Butinbro*, which at this day is corruptly called *Butinbro*, (a place directly

of the Ottoman.

49

rectly ouer against *Corfu*, and ten miles somewhat more West of *La Bastia*. (Wherunto they were moued, not because the Turkes were neuer heretofore possessed of them (although the Venetians had possessed the same, long before the Turkes had any possession in *Albania*) but onely because there runneth a rumour among them, that the said fishings are rented at a hundred thousand duckats, where as in deed there is no more payed for them, then six thousand or thereabouts.

Others per-
swade to at-
tempt the
coasts of the
Adriaticke sea.
Others Pola,

Some other Bassae were of opinion, that the Turkish fleete shold vpon a sodaine go forth with a good wind, either from *Morea*, or from the gulfe of *Lepanto*, or from *Preusa*, or else from *Velona*, and run all along the coastes of the Adriaticall sea, with a full resolution to surprise that part that should bee found most cōuenient and commodious for them. Which course they did thinke would very easily sorte to verie good purpose, because they presumed, that all the places which lay vpon the sea, might verie fitly bee annoyed also vpon the land, for that the Turkes haue almost all that Countrey in their possession. These Bassae likewise aboue all other attempts, propounded the easinesse and also the great importance of possession *Pola*, and *Ragugia*. The one because it is a Citie, which is altogether disinhabited; and hath a verie faire hauen; and is situate in *Istria*, and is also a prouince not verie wel furnished with Souldiers and inhabitants, nor greatly strengthened or fenced with Fortresses: and principally, because it seemeth that the said City of *Pola*, is not distant from *Venice*, aboue a hundred and twentie miles.

O

The second part

miles. And the other, that is to say *Rugugia*, because it is (as it were) the second Gate, (for the first and chiefest is thought to bee *Corsu*) whereby you may enter into the Maritimall and Sea-state of the Venetian Common-wealth in the Adriaticall sea, and also because the situation therefore, is most fit and conuenient for preparation to be made therein, for annoyng of Italie, if they should meane so to do in good earnest: especially, for that the state of *Rugugia* hath within it most safe and spacious portes and hauen, whereof indeed the Turke hath great want in that quarter of the sea.

For *Durazzo* hath not any hauen able to receiue foure Gallies, and also in the entrance thereof, there are many flattes and shelves which are verie daungerous. Twelue miles beyond *Durazzo*, vnder the Cape or Promotorie of *Lacchi*, there is an other harborough for twenty gallies, or there aboutes, but it is not verie safe: neither are there any great good waters about it. In the Gulfe of *Velona*, there is also an other harborough vnder the land for so many gallyes likewise. Somewhat nearer on this side, about some eight miles, is the Hauen called *Porto Raguseo*, where may lodge some thirtie Gallyes, but not verie safely on the North, on the Northwest, nor on the West. Without the Gulfe, at least in the coast of *Albania*, or rather within the Gulfe (for the ancient Authours doe bound the Adriaticall Sea with the mountaines of *Cimmeria*) there is first the Hauen of *Santi quarama* (i. the fortie Saints) where likewise they may entertaine some few Gallyes. And a little on this side of that, is *Neriko*, sometimes called *Orico*: where

of the Ottoman.

where the Romanians touched, when they departed from *Orranto*, to the end they might afterwards saile all along that coast. And this Hauen is able to receiue fortie Gallies: but it is not verie safe. The onely hauen of *Rugugia*, which be fiftie or sixe, are of the greatest receyete: in three whereof especially in the Hauen of *Santa-Croce*, there may be entertained and harbourred all the Armadaes of the world, much more the fleete of the Turkish Shippes. The same place also is verie fit and conuenient for the Turkes, because they may easily conueigh thither their timber for ships, from the Mountaines of the *Ducagimi* in *Albania*: which cannot so commodiously be brought into the other portes aboue mentioned as I haue somewhat more at large declared in other writings that I haue penned vpon the occasion of this warre.

But the greatest part of the Visiers inclined most to the attempt of the Isle of *Candie*, for (said they) seeing it is most necessarie to secure the nauigation, which the Turkes continually make from Constantinople to Alexandria, for Marchandises, and for devotion to Mecca, that they might bee safe from the Gallies of Spaine, of Malta, and of Florence, it could not otherwile bee brought to passe, but by one of these two wayes, as a captain of the *Emirs* once said. (*These Emirs professe themselves to be of the right & true descent from their Law giner Mahomet, and therefore bant.*) that is to say, eyther by binding the Venitians, that they shall not onely forbear to give entertainment to the laide Gallyes within there Seas, but also make satisfaction for all

The second part.

losses, that the Turkes shall sustaine, as often as they shall not safely guard their said ships from all such dangers. Or else by causing the Venetians to suffer and permit a good companie of Turkish Gallyes to be resident at Candie for that purpose. Herevnto they added also, that this attempt would proue the better, & come to good successe, because that kingdome is diuided in it selfe, by reason of the difference which is betweene the Greeke Religion, and the Latine, and for the great discontentments, which some (but falsly and vainly peraduentur) do report, to be growen betwene the noble men of Venice, and the Noble men of Candie, betwene those that are priuiledged persons, and those that are tied to impositions and taxes, and betwene the Clownes and the Gentlemen there. And so much the rather, for that it is a verie easie matter to set vpon it with a Turkish Armada, seeing it is (as it were) compassed about with *Natolia*, with *Caramania*, with *Barbarie*, with *Alexandria*, with *Morea*, and with the *Archipelago*, which are all Countreys belonging to the Turkish Empire: so that they may easily from hand to hand ayde and succour those that should first attempt to disturbe therein. Moreouer, that by the purchase and winning of this most fruitfull Island, they should obtaine the absolute commaund and rule of the Sea, for that it is (as it were) the verie Center in the middle of the Mediterranean Sea, or rather of the world, considering that it is almost equally distant in situation from *Asia*, *Africa*, and *Europe*, so that it was by the auncient Authours adiudged the most fit and conuenient seate of all the worlde. And

the Ottoman.

51

And this also might so much the more easily bee brought to passe, for that thereby the number of the Venetians Galleyes should be diminished, and the Ottoman Empire should encrease the meanes to make many moe Gallyes, then now they haue. Lastly, seeing there are many *Candiotes* remayning in *Constantinople*, they may haue good information, and some aide also of them, and so much the more, because many of them are banished persons, and haue eyther withdrawne themselues into that City to get their liuings, by labouring in the *Arsenal*, and in *Pera*, or else are come thether with marchandises, and specially their most pretious wines, which they bring thorough the Greater Sea, and from thence to the mouthes of the *Danowe*, and so to *Chilia*, to *Gallatz*, to *Rene*, euen to the *Floz* in *Walachia*, and then in Cartes into *Polonia*: For into *Germanie* they are brought, not by that way (as some write) but by the Ocean to *Hamburgh*, and to *Lubeke*, and some fewe to *Danske*: and yet there are some carried thether also by the way of *Venice*.

The wayes
how the Mus-
cadels of Can-
die are con-
uayed into Po-
lonia, Mocho-
rie & Germa-
nie.

S. XI.

THE Sixth opinion was, that leaving all these other courses and enterprises, all the Forces, that the Turkes could make as wel by Land, as by Sea, should be sent against *Italie*: And the reasons were these, That if they were minded indeed to attempt the conquest of the Monarchie of the worlde, the Turkish Empire should never attaine vnto it, vnlesse it first obtayned the Rule and Lordshippe of *Italie*:

The Sixth op-
inion to attemp-
Italie, and the
reasons there-
of
because

O 3

The second part

because out of that Province, as from the Centre of the vniversal world there doe proceed all the counsels and principall assistances, that may hinder and crosse the proceedings which are attempted elsewhere. That the Romanes became to bee Lordes and Maisters of the world, because they had the government of *Italie* in possession. That the *Hunnes* did alwayes direct all their designementes to that onely end, when they passed into *Italie* out of *Hungaria*, by *Dalmatia*, and by *Carsia*: That the *Alanes* and the *Gothes*, as well those that dwelt on this side, as those also on the other side of the *Danone*, after they had conquered *Grecia*, entred into *Italie* by the waye of *Bosna* and *Croatia*. That the *Vandales* also, having subdited *Spaine*, went therewith an Armada of shippes out of *Africa*: And lastly, That the *Germanes*, the *Frenchmen* and the *Spaniardes*, had oftentimes done the like.

Moreouer, that the Saracens (of whome it was wont to bee said in the Romanes times, that it was very conuenient either not to haue them enemies, or to keepe them friendes,) had ouerrunne it all thorough, kept it a long while in their possession, and sacked *Rome* it selfe, the Ladie and Empresse of the world: A City, which (as *Sultan Soliman* very fondly sayed according to the reporte of *Iouins*) did of right belong to the Ottoman Empire, because it was alienated by *Constantine*, to the great prejudice of his successors. To bee short, that there could no enterprise be attempted, either more glorious or more profitable, then this of *Italie*, for that it is the Province, which is Queen of al the rest,

The foolish speech of Soliman touching Rome.
The praise of Italy,
aire,

of the Ottoman.

52

ayre for fruitfulness for all thinges necessarie for mans life, for the maestie and beautie of so many most famous and noble Cities, for riches, for the veerie Sea, and seate of the Christians religion, for the auncient Glorie and mightinesse of that Empire, and for many other respects. That it would also bee a verie easie matter to bring to passe, for that *Italie* is at this day ruled and gouerned by manie Princes which are diuided among themselues, as well in regarde of their owne priuate interestes, as also of severall nations, whereof they are proceeded: and that peraduenture they are not all verie willingly and loyally obeyed of their Subiects and peoples, who by reason of the peace, which they haue so many yeares enjoyed, will proue to be but cowards and weakelings: and for that also they are growen to such a huge multitude, as if entraunce shold bee made into the Countrey, either in one part or in many, at such times as their corne were yet ripening in their fields, as the Turks shold on their behalves want no vittailes, so shold the Italians be of necessarie constrained either to shut vp themselues within their fortresses, or else to perish for hunger. Which thing will be made more manifest and cleare, if yee shall consider, that now whiles they liue in peace, they haue not corne sufficient for their sustenance, but are enforced to prouide the same abroad, and to cause it to be brought to them from *Morea*, from *Constantinople*, and euen as farre as from the Ocean. Moreouer, that the Italians are accustomed for the most part to procure their liuings with handi-crafts, or with traffique, in such sort, as if their trades were hindered,

How the Itali-
ans prouide
themselues of
Corne.

The second part

hindred, they should bee compelled so much the rather to yeeld to such conditions as the conquerour shall impose vpon them, or at least to become tributaries, and acknowledge the *Ottoman's* power. And besides, that the Turkish Souldiers would willingly goe thither, because they are not to passe through Countryes, which are barren, frozen with Ice, and disinhabited, or through thicke bushes and woods, or mountains vnpasseable, but as it were in the sight of their own houses, and through their own proper Countryes. And lastly, that if the Turkes haue entered therinto at other times, when their borders and confines were not so conuenient, nor so near as now they are : much more may they, or rather ought to attempt the same at this time, seeing they haue them now so nigh and commodious.

§. XII.

The seauenth
opinion, to
warre against
Polonia, and
the reasons
thereof.

THE seauenth opinion was, that they should make war first in *Polonia*, and then afterwardes in *Hungarie* and *Germanie*. The reasons thereof were these : That soasmuch as it did not stand with the dignity of the *Ottoman* maiesty, to suffer the king of *Polonia* so often to refuse the payment of his Tribute, it was very fitte, that all forcible meanes should bee vied to recover the same. That for the many discontentmentes, which haue passed in that Kingdome, there was very good hope that hee might the more easily bee enforced to pay it. That the warre should be verie conuenient and commodious for the *Turkes*, because *Polonia* was so neare, & bordered

of the Ottoman.

53

bordered vpon *Moldavia*, and vpon the *Tartarians*, and also vpon the *Sangiucke*hippes of *Achermano*, & of *Bendero*, and vpon *Vosia*. Againe, That the entier and quiet possession of *Moldavia*, and *Walachia*, could neuer be kept & maintained, vntesse the hardie boldnes of the *Polackes* were brideled : and so much the more for that the *Vainodes* of those provinces, although they were greatly enriched, yet could they neuer recover theselues in any distresse, nor bee reliued any where but in the *Turkes* kingdome. That by these meanes also the iniuries might bee reuenged, which were wrought against the *Turkes* by the *Cosacchi*, when they sacked *Coslou*, The Cosacchi
Coslou. a place in *Taurica* belonging to the *Turkish* state: that therby likewise the passage should be eased for their Matchandises, that goe from the *Turkish* States into *Moscovie*: that the *Moscuite* himselfe should bee put in a bodily feare, (and that peruaenture to his great losse and damage) because his Countrey laye so neare, especially, considering that hee was the impediment, why the *Ottoman Empire* atchieued not the totall conquest of *Persia*. That growing in this sort so nigh unto *Germanie*, it may bee that one onely discomfiture would vtterly ouerthrow the Emperour, for that hee shoulde see his Countrey the more easily compassed about with the *Ottoman Forces*: That to bee short, all the Countrey of *Polonia* is very open and without Fortresses, and that the *Polackes* themselues were not now to bee accounted any great warriours, because they haue liued so long in peace. For the wars which they made with *Maximilian* were but of small continuance, and the other

P

warres

The second part

warres which were made before by King Stephen with the *Muscouite*, were made by him as hee was an *Hungarian*, and rather with *Hungarian Souldiers*, then with *Naturall Polackes*, and rather with besieging, then with fighting.

§ XIII.

The eight opinion to war against the Emperor: and the reasons thereof.

The insolencies of the Venetians.

THE eight and last opinion was, that warre should bee made against the Emperour, whome the Turkes call, *The King of Belz*, that is to say, of *Vienna*, in times past peraduenture *Vindoniana*. Those which were of this opinion, were moued thereunto: for that the *Vscocchi* were become so intolent in prayng vpon the Turkes both by land and by sea, as not only in regard of the losses, which they continually wrought, but also euen for the honour of the *Ottoman* maestie, they could no lōger be endured: & so much the rather, for that the merchants subiect to the Turke, both to the publike and to their owne priuate detriment, haue beene constrained to change the Port of *Narenta*, and to go to *Spalato*, a Countrey belonging to the Venetians, to the end they might carrie their Marchandizes into the Christians Countryes, and bring backe other Marchandizes for them into Turkie. And yet they could not by that course goe and come safe; neither notwithstanding the peace, that hath beene continued with the Emperour and the Venetians. Moreover, that they also ranne vp and downe by land, stealing mens cattell, burning townes and villages, and taking children euē out of the verie armes of

their

of the Ottoman.

54

their naturall mother. So that there is great reason to feare, least in time they wil be able to become the Lordes and maisters of some neighbour-Fortresse, which would be a matter that might turne, not onely to the great losse, but also much rather to the exceeding shame and dishonour of the *Ottoman Empire*. Againe, that forsoomuch as the Emperour had carried so slender a respect towards the grand-Turk, whiles he was busied in the warres of *Persia*, as that he delayed in deed for a long time to send him his tribute: (for so the Turkes call it) hee made shew thereby that hee was rather minded to breake the peace, then to maintaine it. That the victorie would proue both easie and certaine, for that on the one side he might be assaulted in *Croatia*, and on the other side in *Hungarie*, and in *Austria*. That the countrey was fruitfull and abounding in all things, verie commodious and fit for the Souldiers, both in regard of the neerenesse thereof, and also because they should passe thither (almost all the way) by their owne houses. That the principall Holdes of the Kingdome of *Hungarie*, namely *Belgrado*, *Buda*, and *Alba Regale*, and the rest that are of the greatest importance, were possessed and garded vettie well with the Turkish garrisons. And that although some discomfiture might peraduenture happen, yet would they be most conuenient receits for the Reliques of the armie, where they may be as well defended and preserued, as also repaired and renued with such helpe and aydes, as are there nigh at hand. That the Emperor seemed to be inclined rather to peace then to warre: and it may be also, that hee is not so

P 2

well

The second part.

The Emperour eas haue
no aid of other
Princes.

well esteemed and obeyed by all the Princes of Germanie, as his degree requireth. That all the Princes of Germanie were diuided, as well in regard of their interest in Religion, and in state, as also particularly in respect of the election of the Newe King of Romanes. That they are almost wearie (as some of the Protestant Princes doe severally reporte) of the gouernement of the house of Austria: and that they are also too much giuen to the loue of their treasures and riches. And finally, that seeing there are many yeares passed since the Germanes haue handled neither Launce nor Arcubuse, they cannot now tell how to take Armes, nor to vse them: besides that they will hardly bee obedient to their Capitanes. Lastly, That euen as the saide Almanes themselves would alwayes dwell in murmur and distrust with the Hungarians, with the Italians and with the Spaniardes, as often as they should goe to the warres together, because those nations are naturally not well liked, (I will not say hated) by them: So the layde Dutchmen, being enemies among themselves for the diuersitie of Heresies which they follow, will alwayes bee afraide, least if the Emperour should obtaine the victorie and remaine Conquerour, that then they shall bee compelled to forsake their licentious liberty, and to obey the Pope: So that there is no doubt, but that they will rather forbear to fight, then to helpe their prince and themselves! To bee short, that there could be no fear of any aide or succours, which the Emperour might haue of other princes. Not of the Polacke, nor of the Transyluanian, aswell in regarde of the peace

of the Ottoman.

55

peace, which is between the Great Turke and the, as also for that they will be in doubt, least they shold drawe all the tide and force of the warre into their owne States and Dominions. Besides, that the one of them would be afraide, least hee should bee enforced to abandon the Frontiers, and retire himselfe to the frozen Sea, and the other least he should bee depriued of that Estate, which hee possessed by the Graunt of the Ottoman House. Moreouer, that the King of Spaine, who is the onely Man that can helpe the house of Austria in deede, is otherwise imployed and busied. That the pope cannot yeeld supply for all, that shall bee needfull in this busines. That the Italian princes will not runne in haste to spend their Treasures, nor consume their subiectes for an other mans benefite. And for conclusion, That the State of Venice, doubting that it shoulde thereby prouoke the Ottoman Forces against it selfe, would rather stay to see the issue and successe of the warre, then it would put it selfe to a certaine, or at least to a doubtfull danger of ouerthrowing it selfe.

And these were the seuerall opinions of the Vissiers, inconsidereate no doubt for the most parte, and agreeable to their barbarous temerity and rashnes, whereby they faine vnto themselves that those things are easie, which afterwardes by experience they proue not onlie to bee difficult and hard, but also very dangerous and pernicious.

P. 3.

§ X.III.

The second part

§ XIII.

BVt for as much as my meaning is to satisfie those also, that may in any sort doubt of the varietie and truth of the things, which I haue spoken, I will adde hereunto in briefe, how the Turkes come acquainted with our matters, and how wee come acquainted with theirs: though it be most certaine, that the like consultations are proper to all Princes, and particularly to the *Ottoman* Princes, as among other examples, we know that *Soliman*, and the last *Selim*, did vse the same, the one of them by examining with his Bassaes the forces of all the Princes of the world, and the other by aduising with them, which might be the most certaine way to conquer the Christians.

The consulta-
tions of Soli-
man & Selim.

How the
Turks come
to the know-
ledge of our
affaires,

Marchants
slaves,

Without doubt the great Turke, and the great men of that Courte are verie well informed and aduertised, aswell of all actions that daylie happen, as also of the designementes and purposes, yea and of the most secret counselfles of our Princes, sometymes by the merchauntes, which of all nations are at Constantinople, and sometymes by the Slaves, whom the Turks euery day. A great number wherof, doe also verie oftentimes most impiously denie and renounce the faith and religion of Christ, either for rewards that are propounded and offered vnto them, or else to auoyd the most horrible and cruell punishment, which they had before endured at their barbarous hands, or peraduenture forsome other end and purpose, as did of late yeares one of the Emperours

the Ottoman.

56

Emperours Secretarie, who was resident at *Constantinople*. Besides that the Hebrues, who are the most cunning and craftie searchers and inquirers of matters, and most mortall enemies to the Christians, are dispersed in great number ouer all the Turkish dominion, especially by reason of the traffique which they vse continually in the *Ottoman* Market townes, and also for the tolles and customes which are almost wholly in their handes, through all that state. And they thinke, that by seruing the Turkes for spies and priers into our actions and affaires they shall not only secure themselves of their goods, their owne persons, and their children, but also that they shall reape great gaine and commoditie of importance, whereby they doe much gratifie and pleasure the great estates of that Empire. The last war which the Venetians had with the Turke, was much occasioned by one *John Michies* an Hebrew, who was discontented with them, because hee could not by stealth conueigh away certain marchandizes, which vnder a forged name he had caused to be brought to *Venice*. Of one *John Lopez* an Hebrew also (whole picture by order of the holie Inquisition was of late a few yeares burned at *Rome*), it is most certainly knowne for a truth, that hee imparted and commnnicated with *Amurath* many secrete of Pope *Xijus Quintus* which he by espiall had found, and learned whiles he remained in *Rome*. Lastly, it is not to be doubted, but that the Turkes doe also keepe diverse Spies in pay, that are neare to al the Princes in Christendom: yea (and that which is a great matter, but yet it is true) eu'en among the *Zwitzers*, and *Grisons* of purpose.

John Michies
a Jew.

John Lopes

Spies among
Christians.

The second part.

purpose to vnderstand what levies of Souldiers are made of those peoples.

§ XV.

How we come to the knowledgē of the Turks affaires. Spies, Iewes and Turkes. The Bassaes. Why the Bassaes disclose the Turkes secrete, ;

And as touching our Christian Princes, the expences are most notorious and well knowne, which they bestow, not onely to learne the counsels one of another, (and that oftentimes to the great shame and damage of those that serue them in these actions) but especially and principally to vnderstand the counsels and designements of the Turke their common enemy. For those Princes which haue the greatest interest and entercourse with him, do keep (euen within the Citie of Constantinople) many Spies in pay, yea giuing wages and stipends to the verie Iewes, and also to such Turkes, as are most in trust, and neerest in credite with the chiefe Bassaes, besides the large gifts which they liberally bestow vpon others, when they haue any matter of moment communicated vnto them. Moreouer, the Bassaes themselves will not sticke sometimes to impart to our Embassadours such matters, as are propounded among them in their secrete and priuie Councell before the great Turke himselfe: although he doth vse verie oftentimes to call his Councell into the field, taking occasion to go on hunting, to the end it shuld not bee so easie for any particular persons to found the depth of his deliberations. But the Bassaes are hereunto moued vpon diuerse and sundrie considerations: sometimes vpon affection, as heretofore did Mahomet Socalenick the chiefe Vicer of Selim, and the

of the Ottoman.

57

the Muphti of that time, to the Agents of the state What * Muphti. of Venice.

Muphti is the chiefe man among the Turkes in their spirituall Superstitions, & the chiefe Interpreter of the law of Mahomer, and is of so great authoritie in shew and appearance that in matters of counsel his opinion is neuer contradicted or gainsaid: I say in appearance, because when the Turke is disposed to haue any matter goe forwarde in deed, the Muphti either for flatterie, or for feare, is the first and chiefe man to commend it.

Sometimes the Bassaes are moued so to doe, for that by quarrelling and iarring among themselues, they thinke by these meanes the more easily to disturbe the designements and purposes of their opposites, as peraduenture the aforesayde Bassaes did, and as Sinan and Ferat at last were wont to doe. Or to be short, they are verie oftentimes moued thereunto, because all Turkes generally are beyond all measure greedie of bribes and gifts: as for example among the Bassaes, that same Hassun shewed himself to be, who was a Venetian of the Cilestri, and Generall of the Sea before Cicala. For when one of the Vicers had offered in Councell to the great Turke that he would surprise the Citie of Venice, and was not hearkened vnto, but rather reproued for his ridiculous vanitie, hee went straight to the Venetian Bailo, or Agent, and told him, that whereas such a matter was propounded in the Councell by others, he withstoode it, for the naturall affection which he carried towardes that Common wealth: for the which he receiuied a most rich present. Lastly, it is true also, that the Ottoman Counsellors do rewarde

The cunning knauerie of Hassan Bassa.

Q

their

The second part

The Ladie
Sultanes.

Feathers made
of Glasse.

their seruants, and enrich them by imparting their secrete vnto them, to the ende that they may afterwards acquaint such withall, as vse to bee most libe-
rall to them. And so doe they likewise to their wo-
men: whereupon it commeth to passe, that the *Sultane* Ladies (who are either the Kings folkes or the fa-
vorites of the great Turke, dwelling continually in
the *Serraglio*es, where al principall busynesses are ma-
naged and handled) become acquainted with these
secretes, which afterwardes for verie rich gifts and
presents that are sent to the said Ladies, from the of-
ficers and Agents of such Princes as the secrete doe
concerne, by the Eunuches that wait vpon them
and keepe them, are verie easily disclosed and reuealed.
Moreouer they do sometimes indeuour with all
their studie and industrie, to performe some notable
seruice towards some Prince, to the end they might
receiue the oftner and richer Gratuities from him.
The mother of the now reigning Turke, pretendeth
to honour the state of Venice, and craueth of it verie
many times some reward for the same. It is not long
ago since all the *Sultane* Ladies requested of the sayd
state, that it would forbid the carrying out of certain
feathers that are counterfeited and forged of glasse,
at *Murano*: which being ioyned and set together, do
much resemble the plumes made of a Herōs fether.
And this request they made, because the said coun-
terfeit or forged feathers, were sold so good cheape
at *Constantinople*, and yet did so please and satisfie the
people, that the said *Sultane* Ladies could not sell at
so high a rate, as before they did, the goodly bun-
ches and bundles of feathers of severall birds, which
were

of the Ottoman.

58

were sent vnto them for Presentes, from diuerse The vse of
quarters in great quantities: for it is the vse not there, how and
only of men, but of women also, to weare such
feathers on their heades: following therin the
manner of the Tartarians, (from whome it came to
the Turkes:) for that *Zingi Chan* (who by some is
not rightly called *Chan-gio*,) was sauued aliue by
the meanes of an Owle: for this Birde hauing a
lighted vpon a certaine thicket of young trees, a-
mong which *Zingi* had hidden himselfe, for feare of
his enemies that pursued him, they did verily thinke
that there could not be any body there, because the
Birde remayned there so quietly. Whereupon the
Tartarians (sayeth *Hayho*) do holde the sayde Birde
in great reverence, so that hee, which at that time
could get any of her feathers, accounted himself a
happy man. And euer after, all the other Tartarians
from hand to hand haue still continually vsed to
weare the like feathers on their heades in me-
morie of that action, and for a kinde of Re-
uerence.

§ XVI.

But to retorne to our discourse where wee left it: Amurath res-
olutch to
make warre vs
pon the Emper-
tour.

Amurath, after hee had floated and waured
certaine dayes betweene the contrarieties of these
his Visiers Opinions, resolued with himself to moue
warre against the Emperour, hoping in this part of
the world also to surpass the memorie of his prede-
cessors, as hee thought hee had done in *Persia*, and
so much the rather, for that hee was to make warre
in

Q. 2

The second part.

Encouraged
thereunto by
Sinan Cicali.

By Hassan the
Bassa of Bosna

In a Countrey adioyning to his owne, and consequently very conuenient for Vittailes, and not inconvenient for his Subiectes. Hereunto hee was also encouraged and heartened by *Sinan Cicala*, after that hee perceyued hee had not perswaded the enterprize of *Corsu*: hoping withall to obtayne the Generallshippe, whereby hee might put downe his Opposites, and purchase greate riches: especially hauing authority, as indeede for the space of seauen yeares hee had, to doo whatsoever the Great Turke himselfe might haue done, if hee had beeene present in the Campe. Moreouer *Hassan* the Bassa of *Bosna*, a man rather temerarious and headie, then valorous: (if yee consider what he did in *Croatia*) continually solicited *Amurath* to the same purpose: both for the selfe same end, which is common to all the Turkes, that is to say, to enrich himselfe by the meanes of warre, and also because hee yerilie beleeted, that by this course he should safely attaine and come to those supreme honours and dignities, which were foretold him by the superstitious Southsayers. For beeing the Great Turkes chiefe Cutthrote or Executioner, he was a most vaine obseruer of such diuinations: Whereupon to satisfie *Sinan* and himselfe, hee did continually aduertise and inform the Turke of the losses and damages that were wrought by the *Vscocchi*; and by the Subiects of the Arch-duke, and of the burninges and spoiles that they committed whiles they ouerranne the Countrey: wherewith he did also assure him, that the best course hee could take, was to beginne the warre in those partes, and afterwardes pursue the same either

of the Ottoman.

59

ther against the Emperour, or against the Venetians, or else passing ouer on a sodaine into *Italie* (as was done in the dayes of *Mahomet*, of *Baizet*, and of *Soliman*) to put all the princes of that Prouince into an exceeding feare, and so to reape and bring home most rich and wealthie spoyles. Yea he solicited him so farre, that at the last hee obtained licence of the Turke to begin the warre, by making himselfe to be

The fort of
Petrina.

seen and knowne that hee was in the confines of the Emperour: but yet with secret commission, that he should not say he did it vpon his commaundement. He erected the Fort of *Petrina* vpon the riuer of *Cupa*, which he called of himselfe *Hassan Grad*:

a place from whence he might easily runne ouer the

Countrey, and bridle *Carlifod*, *Zagabria*, *Metlica*, and

all the Countries round thereabout: and spoy-

ling the villages euerie where, hee filled all places

with terror, with teares, and with lamentations.

And one thing I will note by the way, which is me-

A Parallele of
two Bassas.

morale, and notable, Namely, that the first man al-

fo, that ouer ranne the Countrey in the confines of

Persia at the last warres, in token that the Turke had

broken the peace with him, was called euen by the

same name *Hassan*, being the Bassa of *Van*, which is

a Citie either of *Medea*, now called *Seruan*, and *Vaa-*

pracan; or in the confines thereof, and was somtimes

the vttermost place that the Turkes had toward *Per-*

sea; and the same *Hassan* was none otherwise ouer-

thowen by the Persians, then as afterwardes it

happened to this *Hassan*, in fighting with the Empe-

rialists.

Q 3

X V I

The second part

§ XVII.

What the Vf. **B**vt because I haue oftentimes made mention of the *Vscocchi*, it will not be farre from the purpose, before I passe to other mater, briefly to tel you, who they be, and so much the rather, because they were the occasion of so great a warre. It is not true, that those whom wee call *Vscocchi*, (which signifieth by the Sclauoine worde *Scoi*, Skippers, or Leapers, because they skip and leape like Goats, with their corded shooes vpon the toppes of the Mountaines.) It is not true (I say) that they are Inhabitants of *Chimera*, as *Iouius* and others that follow his opinion do beleue. For the *Vscocchi* do dwell about ffeue hundred miles distant from the *Chimeriottes* (and yet they are both people of *Albania*) in the Mountaines that are called *Acro-ceraunii*, in the mouth of the Gulfe, right against the Cape of *Santa Maria*, the vttermost Promontorie of all *Italie*. The *Vscocchi* speake the Sclauoine speech, but the *Chimeriottes* the Albanian: The one liue after the Romish rite, the other after the Greeke. The one are a companie gathered together, and that but of a few, the other naturall by countrey, and many in number. Among the *Vscocchi* there bee many *Murlacchi*, which cannot stay vnder the Turke, and many that are banished by the state neer to the Venetians and other Princes therabouts, and fled to the *Vscocchi* for verie pouertie. There are also among them many *Martelosi*, that are Spies, and theeuers in those quarters: for so in deed signifieth the worde *Martelos*, so that it is the name of a profession,

What the Mar
telosi are.

the Ottoman.

60

sion, and not of a Nation, as some haue thought. And because I haue also made mention of the *Mur*- What the Mur
lacchiare. *lacchi*, I will not omit to tell you what they be. The *Murlacchi* are called in those partes all the Christians that dwel in the Mountaines, but specially those that inhabit the mountaine *Lica*, which is betweene *Nouigrad* and *Segna*. The originall of the *Sclauoine* worde *Moralacchi*, was at the beginning, when the Barbarians came into *Italie*, because after that they had passed *Walacchia*, they called the peoples that dwelled at the Adriatike Sea by that name, as if they would say, Dwellers on the Sea. For euen as the Turkes do call all the Italians by the generall word *Franchi*, of the particular nation of the Frenchmen, so did the Barbarians terme all Italians likewise by that tearme of *Vulacchi*, or *Vuloschi*, as though they were *Walacchians*.

The *Vscocchi* doe dwell vpon the Sea at *Segna*, and Where the Vf- *Buccari*, and within the land of *Othozaz*, and ouer all *Vinodol*, which is a territorie belonging to the Conte of *Sdrim*. And although they runne vp and downe all these quarters, spoylling and robbing, and stealing all that they can get, no otherwise then the *Turcomanni* did in times past among the *Grecians*, yet are they tollerated by the Imperiall Officers, because they would not loose the deuotion and beneuolence of that people, who without any expences or charges of those estates, and with great brauerie defend those Frontires, euen as the *Cofacci* do in *Pola-* nia, of whom I will speake more hereafter. But be- Why they are
cause they are thus tollerated and also protected, the Imperia- *haue* tollerated by
contrarie to the couenaunts and agreements that lists.

The second part

The Turkes
grecued with
this tolleratio.

The Veneti-
ans grecued
at it alio.

haue passed betweene the Imperialistes and the Turkes , and also concerning the sea betweene the Venetians and the Turkes, they haue oftentimes giuen occasion to the Turkes to put handes to their weapons , for the defence of their subiects and of their marchadises, which they carry to *Ancona*, & to Venice: yea & the Venetians theselues haue bin occasioned to do the like, as wel for the maintenāce of the iurisdiction which they pretend to haue in the Adriaticall sea, as also because they would take away al occasions frō the Turkes to come with an Armada, for reuenge of the iniuries and losses , which they haue receiued by thesaid Vscocchi: and finally, because they would not bee troubled with the great Turke, as alwayes they are , when his subiects are spoyled , by demaunding amedes for the same. Moreouer, the Vscocchi haue within this little time laid their hands to robbe the Christians also of their marchandizes, and particularly the Venetians , not (as their Vaiuodes and Arambassi do say) for the losses which they receyued these last yeare, whiles they were besieged in *Segna*, but in truth to enrich themselues, by all the iniurious wayes and meanes they could. Wherenvnto they doe the more willingly applie themselues, because they know verie well that they cannot be hindred or at least verie hardly, by the said Venetians , for that they come backed and assisted by the Imperialistes , and can quickly recover their owne home, as in deede they doe both safely and securely, and whensoeuer they list.

These Vscocchi, may come forth into the Sea, to pray and spoyle by fourre wayes : that is to say, betweene

of the Ottoman.

61

betweene *Fiume*, *Vegbia*, and *Cherfo*: betweene How many
wayesthe Vc-
these Islandes and *Arbe*, betweene *Arbe* and *Pago*, come forth
to the Sea.
cocchi may and betweene *Pago*, and the firme land of *Zara*. This last passage hath somewhat a straite Channell, and may bee of some 100.paces.

The Venetians do keepe diuerse Gallyes, and Barkes armed, that walke continually vp and down these Channels to hinder the *Vscocchi*, but by reason of the many disorders, that haue hetherto hapened, there are now but some Gallyes onely, or at least accompanied with a fewe Barkes of small auiale. It were verie necessarie, principally to multiplie the number of Barkes, which being backed behind with Gallyes, might easilly set vppen the *Vscocchi* : and then without all doubt they might make the passage for Marchantes to bee more safe and secure: and somuch the better if there were appointed certaine watches, euen in such places as were fittest for that purpose. And although to doe this, the costes and charges would be of some moment, yet they might well bee borne, considering they shall bee vsed but for a small time : for the *Vscocchi* being once leuured and scattered, they cannot so easily vnite themselues together againe : And the Marchants also no doubt, would willingly contribute to the charges, forasmuch as it concerneth their benefite and interest principally. There might also a remedy be had against their Theeueries in another sort, that is, by contributing to the chiefe Captaines of the said *Vscocchi*, a certaine summe of money competent, to the end they should abstaine from doing any damage by Sea, cyther to the Turkes or Christians . For to hinder

R

The second part

hinder theees from robbing, especially such as these bee, who are very courageous and hardie, is a thing almost impossible, vnlesse it might bee performed in deed by an open warre. And if any man should thinke, that this course would displease the Turke, for that hee could not but suspect that the Venetians did not effectually employ themselves against the *Vscocchi*, so long as their owne Marchants did passe to and fro in safety: and forasmuch also, as this deliberation and agreement could not be kept so secret, but that it must needs come to the knowledge of the Turkes: I doo thinke verily, that it may be provided for by one of these two meanes: eyther by signifying so much to the great Turke himself whose satisfaction is principally respected, or else by making supplication to the Pope, that in regarde of the publike quiet he would enterpose himselfe to cause payment to bee made to the said chiefe Capraines, with the monies of the state of *Venice*, or of the Marchantes, to bee deliuered to his Holines secretlie. Moreover the Empēour himselfe might be treated withall, that his Emperiall Maiesy would bee pleased to accept of a conuenient Garrison for the defence and custody of *Segna*, and of those Confines. Or rather, which would be the true remedie indeed, they might by generall consent and agreement bee driued quite out of those Countryes, considering that they are publike and common theees, and authors of the greatest troubles in Christendome: yea and so much the rather, for that otherwise they can never be diminished, much lesse utterly extinguished, as well because they are not forbidden or hindred

red

of the Ottoman.

62

red from multiplying themselves, and receiuing new supplies dayly into their troupes: as also and principally because they haue a law, that when the husband dieth, the wife remaineth heire of all, and he that afterwards taketh her to wife, becommeth Lord and Maister of all that she possesseth.

A law among the *Vscocchi*.

And hitherto let it be sufficient to haue spoken of the *Vscocchi*, and of the meanes how to reppresse their insolencies: wherein I referre my selfe, as also in all other things which I haue heretofore sayd, and am hereafter to say, to better iudgements then mine owne, and to persons that are better informed, then I am.

§ XVIII.

A Murath then hauing moued warre agaynst the Emperour, *Sigismondo Battori*, the Prince of Transiluania, shewed himselfe openly to be agaynst Sigismondo Battori the Turke: a matter verily not expected by him, and little hoped for by those that examined things onely by reason, and according to state: for assuredly it was the worke of the onely prouidence of God. For by this open declaration of this prince, there is arisen without all doubt, the securtie and safetie of Germanie and Italie, with the most notable diversion of the warre, that euer hath happened hitherto against the proceedings of the Turks, by all the princes Christian that haue fought with them. Whereupon *Sinan* hauing offered himselfe, after the death of *Hassan*, to goe in person for the recouerie of that which was lost; and to restraine the tongues of such

R 2

as

The second part

as did sting and backbite him to his grand Seignieur as being the Authour of this councell, and being gone forth in deed with supreeme and soueraigne authoritie, there happened betweene the one side and the other, all those actions, which shall be particularly written by the Historiographers.

And behold, whiles this *Sinan* was at *Belgrado*, the Empour *Amurath* died the 9. day of Januarie in the yeare 1595. and was buried at *Constantinople*, in a *Moschee*, or *Meszita*, which he had made in his life time, and dedicated to *Bahalzebuf*, that is to say, to the Idle of Flies : for thereupon peraduenture such fabrikes or buildings are either corruptly or in mockage called by vs Christians *Moschee*, of *Moscha* which signifieth a Flie. Prince *Mahamet* being returned fro *Magnesia* to *Constantinople*, after the death of his father, by the great carefulnes of *Ferat*, who presently dispatched a Gally vnto him ; and being introdused according to the accustomed Ceremonies of the *Ottomans*, the deliberations and consultations touching the war, were renued. It was thought at the first, that *Mahamet* was rather inclined to peace then otherwise, hauing found (as it was noted vnto you in the beginning of this discourse) the Citie full of dearthe , his subiects not well pleased with this

warre, the Baffaes diuided among themselues, and specially the two chiefe of them, *Sinan* and *Ferat* : for the one challenged the chiefe place, because hee was alwayes most louing towardes him, and had dissuaded his father from a certain determination that sometimes he had to put him to death, for iealousie of the state, and had euer aduertised him from time to

of the Ottoman.

59

to time, whosomeuer had happened in the Empire. The other thought that he had purchased great merite, because he had in so short a time brought him into the possessiō of his Empire, that he had so greatly desired, and that at such a time, as was most important for the estate of all his affaires. In such sort, as for these causes, and for others also which I haue told you before, they iustled lustily one agaynst the other, till in the end they were both brought to their deathes.

Notwithstanding *Mahamet*, after that hee had somewhat settled his houshold & domestical affaires, that moued was of necessitie constrained to go forth to the war in his owne person : and principally besides the reasons before alledhed, because the Souldiers did not person sticke openly to give him to vnderstand, that to the camp they would go no more without the presence of their great Lord : for that they were greatly discontented with the former Generals, *Sinan* and *Ferat*, who had intreated them verie hardly. Besides that the seedes of ciuill discords, did as yct remaine aliue, in those that were affectionate, some to one of them, and some to the other : And lastly because *Cicala* had promised him assured victorie , if hee would so doe.

§ . XIX.

IN this yeare, which was the first yeare of his going foorth, hee surprised *Agria*: a place which al- though it bee not verie strong in regard of the hill, thereof, that commandeth it, yet is it of great importance for

R 3

the

The taking of
Agria and the
importance
thereof,

The second part

the situation, because the unting of the Transiluanians forces with the Emperours will be now more difficult, for that the Turkes will continually haunt and beate the way that leadeth from *Toccia* to *Cassalia*: for the other vpper way of *Sacmar*, is much longer. And it is so much of greater importance, because if the walles of *Agria* bee repaired, the Turke may there maintaine a puissaunt armie, betweene both his enemies.

s XX.

A doubtfull
battaile.

Lewes the xi.
Charles duke
of Burgundie.

The flight of
Mahamet.

IN this yeare also happened the battaile, whereof without doubt it may be said, that either both the armies remained victorious, the Imperiall in the beginning, and the *Ottoman* in the end: or else that neither of them was vanquished by the other, seeing both of them retired vncertain of their owne estates or how the matter had gone with them. And so do we read, that it happened euen alike in the battaile betweene *Lewes* the xi king of Fraunce, and *Charles Duke of Burgoinie*: to leaue the examples of the Greekes and Romaines, that are more aunctient. Whereupon it was, that both the armies following the aduise and counsaile of *Leo* the Emperour, did rather glie encouragement to their severall peoples, with signes of apparant ioy on both sides, then confessē their losses. True it is in deed, that *Mahamet* saw with his owne eyes, that at the beginning his armie was so discomfited and confounded, as greatly fearing his life, he fled to a hill in the sight of *Agria*, accompanied with some few of his *Agalaries*, and there

the Ottoman.

64

there dried and wiped his eyes with a peece of *Ma-* Hee dried his
homets apparrell, which for reuerence hee carried a peece Maha-
about him. Trne it is that our Men had shewed very great valour: for lesse then 50. thousand Souldiers, (so many iumpe, as *Francisco Maria*, Duke of *Vrbino* required, for the extirpation and rooting out of that tyranny,) went to meeete with the enemie, fought with him, and discomfited an Armie of 300. thousand persons, euen in the presence and viewe of their Prince, who had gathered the same together, almost out of all the Forces of his Empire. Insomuch as it cannot any way bee doubted, but that if our men had been lesse greedy, more vnitid, better aduised and instructed, and aboue all if they had beene the friends of the Lord of Hostes, they had obtayned one of the most singular victories, that peraduenture was euer obtained by the Christians, yea and had taken *Mahamet* prifoner, as *Baiazet* the first was at *Mount Stella*, by the *Great T amur Chan*, that is to say, an Iron Lorde, who is otherwise by some corruptly called *T amerlan* and *Tamerlan*, *Tamburlan*. In briefe, to conclude this parte, the Turkish Captaines having shewed small knowledge and little valour, and therefore many of them were degraded and put to death, and almost all the common Souldiers having likewise shewed great cowardize and astonishment of mind: it is very likelie that their Great Lord and Maister will thinke better of his businesse in the yeare to come, eyther by making peace, or by continuing the warre with lesse daunger. Whereupon,whiles Christendom attendeth and waiteth in great perplexitie of her doubt:

R 4

The third part

doubtfull cogitations; peraduerture it shall not be vnyprofitable, if(as much as shal lie in me) I go about a little further to search out the thoughts and counsels of our enemies, and examine what may or ought to bee done by our Princes Christian to aduance their busynesses, to the glory of God and man.

The end of the Second Part.



The third part.

Wherein is treated, That suppose the Turke will growe to Peace, whether it bee good that the Emperour and the Transyluanian make peace with him: with a discourse of such matters, as if the warre continue, the said Princes may worke against him: & what the other Christian Princes may also doe, to meet at all times, with such daungers as may alight vpon Christendome by the Ottoman Forces,

N this last Part then, I will shewe first, That let it be supposed, Mahamet the Emperour of the Turkes, hath a desire to grow to a Peace with the Christian Emperour, and with the Transyluanian,

of the Ottoman.

65

nian, whether it be good that those Princes should make peace with him: and secondly I will discourse vpon such matters as the great Turke feareth, if the warre bee continued, may bee wrought against him, as wel by the said Princes, as by the other Princes of Christendome. Wherewith I will also endeour my selfe to giue you such notice and knowledge of peoples and places, as peraduenture this my trauaile shall bee deemed altogether vnyprofitable.

§ I.

Even from the verie beginning of this warre, Aduice giuen to Mahamet to make peace with the Emperour. **E**murath refused to treate of peace, whereunto he was greatly solicited by the Embassadors of France, and England: to the ende they might haue procurred him to make warre by Sea, (as before I noted) against the king of Spaine, of purpose to diuert him from the warre, which the said king continued against their Princes. Their instant motions they reinforced againe after the two ouerthrowes giuen to the two Hassans, the one in Croatia, and the other in Hungarie: and a while after that, the stirres and tumults of almost an open rebellion that were perceived in Constantinople, which after the death of Amurath, were much more renued in Mahamets time. They did also most manifestly set before his eyes the difficulties of this present warre, & brought him to a consideration how much more easily the other might be effected. Moreouer, they considered also the open declaration, that the prince of Transiluanian

S

The third part

uania had made, whereby without all doubt the difficulties of the warre might grow greater to the Turks: for that the said Prince being a yong man & valiant, and hauing gained a verie great reputation among diuerse peoples and nations, as well friends, as enemies, he would never be drawen backe by any other meanes, but only by necessitie: wherunto it would be the hardest matter in the world to drive him, as long as there was no peace made with the Emperor, which peace could not by all likelihouds be hoped for at that time, considering the common interestes of both the said Princes, the new confederacie concluded betwixt them by their late alliance, the insurrection of the Rascians (of whom I will speake in their due place) the rebellions of the *Vni-*
nodes of Moldauia and Walacchia, and lastly the feare which all the Turkes had, least the Transiluanian should be the man, that was to bring low, or peraduenture quite to ouerthrow the vnmensurable huge nesse of the Turkish Empire. Insomuch as *Mahamet* giuing eare to the foresaid reasons, & fearing aboue all thinges to prouoke and raise against himselfe a league and confederacie of the Christian Princes, (a matter greatly feared of all the Ottoman Princes) it seemed as well by the answere which hee caused to be giuen to the said Agents, as also by that which he went about to worke, that hee had a minde not altogether alienated or estrangued from peace, and so much the rather, for that hee permitted the *Beglerbey* of Grecia to negotiace and treate with the Agents of the Emperour, of the Transiluanian, and of the Walacchian.

The Turkes
feare the Tran-
siluanian.

Mahamet cō-
tenteth that
peace betrea-
ed of,

II

of the Ottoman.

66

§ II.

Howbeit, the truer opinion was, that this *Mahamet* was encouraged to warre, yea neuer a whit lesse then his father *Amurath* was, especially after the ouerthrow which he receiuied in *Croatia*, to recover the reputation that hee had lost: for so was it the opinion of the olde Archduke *Ferdinando*, that it would come to passe. But in deede it was thought, that herather negotiated the peace (besids those reasons that are aboue specified) as well to follow the vse of all warres, and specially of the *Ottomans*, as also by that meanes to make vs Christians, the more negligent and carelesse in our resolutions and preparations: hoping aboue all other things, that we while peace was intreating, would walke more fearefully and warily in annoying him, least we should thereby prouoke him further: Euen as it fell out (iust) to the Emperour *Maximilian* the second, who for none other respe& forbare to surprise and reduce to his subiection *Alba-Regale*, but onely because he would not anger *Soliman*, with whom he was then in treatie of peace: which although it was indeed concluded, yet was it afterwards broken with the great losse of the said Emperour.

But let vs suppose, that *Mahamet* either desired at that time to make peace in good earnest, or at least desirereth it now at this time, it is fit and conuenient to consider verie well, whether in regard of the present state of our affaires, we on our behalves ought to make peace with him, I will report the principall points of consideration.

S 2

points

Mahamet re-
solved to con-
tinue warre.
The prelge of
Ferdinando.
Why the
Turkes nego-
tiate peace.

Why Maxi-
milian the 2d
did not sur-
prise Alba-
Regale, when
he might.

The third part

points, whereupon in mine opinion this whole busynesse, and the resolution of so important a matter dependeth. Of which poynts some doe belong to the Emperour, and to the Transiluanian, and some others to the honour and interest of all Christendome : leauing the same notwithstanding to the judgement of other men.

S. III.

Conditions of peace, which the Turke will looke for.
A law of the Turkes not to reuere any thing once gotten.
George Wo- couich Dasa pote of Serbia, father in law to Amurath the second.

THE first thing to be considered is, that we may probably beleeue the Turke will neuer make peace, vnlesse on the one side the Emperour, and the Transiluanian doe make restitution vnto him of all his places which they haue surprised : and on the other side, he must remaine free and vnbouned from making any restitution, especially of any thing that is of moment. For the Turkes holde it for an iniurable law, that the ground which is once troden with the feet of their horses, & takē into posseſſion, ought neuer to be restored : & specially if they haue built any *Meschites*, or Temples therein, or else when the places which they haue gotten, be conuenient for them, and for their aduauntage. And al- though we do read that *Amurath* the second, after he had spoyled and deprived the *Despote*, *George Woco- niche of Serbia*, yet hee restored him to his estate which he had lost: yet ye must understand that *Amurath* did so, because hee was desirous to make peace with the Hungarians, whose valour hee greatly feared. Besides that he was also his father in law, because he had a daughter of his to his wife; althogh
she

of the Ottoman.

67

hee were of the Grecce Religion. One of thōſe finnes, for which it hath pleased God to spoile and deprive many Rulers of those Countries, euen of their States and Liberties, as it happened to the said *George* himſelfe, after the laſt ouerthrow of *Laodiceans*: whereupon in their Sclauoyne ſonges, hee is to this day called *Hēuerniſh*, that is to ſay an Infidel.

True it is alſo, that *Cephalonia* the Iſland, belonging ſometimes to the Turke, is now in the poſſeſſion of the State of Venice, after it was conquered by the helpe of *Consaluo di Cordua*, called the Grand Captaine, eyther because the Turke thinketh it is a matter of no moment, or els that it is not very eaſie to be recouered. So *Selim* in the laſt peace that he made with *Venice*, was contented that there ſhould be reſtored to *Giacomo Soranzo* Commissioner for that State, by *Ferat Bey*, (he that of late yeares dyed *Bafſa* of *Buda*,) thirteene villages that were by the bordering Turkes, ſurprized in that warre, in the territorie of *Zara*: foureteene more in the territory of *Sebenico*, and ſomewhat alſo in the territorie of *Spalato*: For by that meane hee thought he ſhould bee the better auerted of the breach and diſſolving of that League, whereof at the laſt hee was greatlie affrayed.

The Reſtitution, which wee may feare, that *Mahamer* looketh to haue from the Emperour will be in *Croatia*, of the contentious Fort of *Petrina*, and of all that which hee hath ſurprized vpon the way of *Canifa*, beyond the riuier *Draua*, euen as farre as *Baboz*, which is neare vnto *Zighet* his Frontier. In the lower *Hungarie* hee looketh for the reſtitution

George Woca uich tearned an Infidel because he maide his daughter to the Turke.

Cephalonia recovered by the Venetians.

Selim restored diuerſe places to Giacomo Soranzo, for the behoofe of Venice.

What reſtitution Mahamer looketh for of the Emperour

S. 3.

of

The third part.

of *Strigonia*, and *Vicegrado*; and in vpper *Hungarie* of *Vaccia*, *Filec* and *Nouigrad*. And it may be more ouer, that hee will challenge the repayring of the burnt walles of *Attuan*, or some encrease of Tribute, (as hee calleth it,) for his expences in the warre.

What restitu-
tion hee loo-
keth for from
the Transylua-
nian.
Of the Prince of *Transyluania*, hee will challenge the restitutio[n] of *Walacchia*, and require that hee deuest and depriue himselfe of all pretenses and tytles, which hee sayeth hee hath thereunto. More ouer that hee restore vnto him *Lippa*, which is of great importance to *Transyluania*, because it is in his confines, and within the Bassanate of *Temesuar* vpon the riuier *Mariiso*: And finally, that the Sangiackeshippes of *Iavona* and *Beccherech* with diuers other places of lesse name, which hee had burned may be repayred, or els that hee may be well payed for the: besides some other giftes and yearely augmentatiōns, which hee looketh for.

What places
the Turke for
his part wil ne-
uer restore.
What a Banū
is.
On the other side, yee may almost be assured that there will neuer bee gotten of Mahomet the Countrey of *Tureuopolie*, which is betweene *Sana* and *Cupa*, now vnder the iurisdiction of the *Bano*: *Bani* are certaine Gouvernors of Prouinces, but are of lesse authoritie then the Beglerbyes, though some haue written otherwise. Neither shall ye ever get of him *Biz*, or *Bicagi*, a place of some importance, because it is more towardes the Sea coast, neare to the territorie of the Venetians to come to *Nouigrad*: nor in *Hungarie* on this side of the *Danowe*, *Velprino*, and *Giauarino*, with the Castles neare adioyning, and beyond the *Danow Agria*, the last place that hee hath taken.

I haue

the Ottoman.

68

I haue thought good to set downe the said places by their particular names, to the ende that by knowing what matters of greatest moment and importance are in the possession of either side, my narration and discourse may proue the plainer.

§ IIII.

THE second thing to be considered is this: if the Turke refuse to make peace ioynlyt with the Emperour and the Transiluanian togither, whether these Princes ought to agree to a peace the one with out the other. Certaine it is, that to doe it feuerally and disioyned, would bee to the great daunger of him that is the weaker, or of him that is excluded out of the peace, and also it would bee agaynst the confederacie, against the couehants and conditions wher unto they haue sworne, and against the promises, which they haue both made to the Pope. Moreover, who can doubt but that it would also bee a-
Ingratitude in
the Emperor.
gainst all law and dutie of gratitude on the Empe-
rours behalfe, in regarde of the singular benefite,
which hee hath receyued by this open declaration
that the Transiluanian hath made against the Turke?
and on the Transiluanians part, would it not bee a-
gainst the obseruation and keeping of his worde,
which he professeth to be inviolable, and quite con-
trarie to that which hee hath hitherto refused to doe,
although hee hath bee[n] therunto required, both by
the last, and also by this now present Emperour of
the Turkes, with most ample and large conditions
of benefite, of honorable tytles, and of perpetuall
Breach offaith
in the Tran-
siluanian.
protec-

The third part

protection? Which if the Emperour *Ferdinando* had regarded, most certaine it is, that little lesseth then all Hungarie had beeene at this day in the possession of our enemies.

Moreouer, who can euer promise to himselfe any faith in an Infidell, without feare, that he will not breake the bonds of all lawfull peace at his pleasure? considering that princes, & specially the barbarous Princes neuer wanted plausible and likely pretenses so to do, as the Venetians do know verie well by the faith and promise, that *Selim* did breake with them, in the yeare 1570. besides almost an infinite number of examples, that might be alledged thereof. Which point of breach of faith, although in truth no prince can in reason feare, yet certaine it is, that the Transiluanian Prince hath an exceeding great cause to feare it, because the *Ottoman* houle thinketh, that from him onely it hath receiued all the iniuries and al the losses of this present warre, and that by his onely Rebellion (for so doe the Turkes call this his iust and lawfull desire, which he hath to withdraw himselfe from the Turkish soueraigntie) all their designements and complots haue beeene interrupted and frustrated, and the course of their hoped victories vtterly stopped: and so much the rather ought he to feare it, for that if the whole tide and force of the warre should come vpō him alone, hardly could he defend himselfe from so mighty an enemie, if he should not be ayded and succoured, neither by the Polacke, nor by the Emperour: for of himselfe alone he is but a poore and a weake Prince. And al- though it may seeme, that he hath a state fortified by

nature,

No faith in
Infidels.

The Transil
uanian is to
feare breach
of faith in the
Turke.

of the Ottoman.

69

nature, and therefore might peraduenture be defended for some time, yet in the ende he shoulde of necessitie be constrained, either willingly or by force to yeeld to that power, which is now growne to be so terrible and fearefull to the whole worlde both for number of people, and also for treasure, and in respect of all maner of furniture for warre, almost invincible.

Neither should the Emperour be free from feare in this point, if the Transiluanian should be at peace with the Turke: because it would be inough for the *Ottoman* Emperour onely to haue these princes disarmed for a time. For hee knoweth verie well with how great difficulty Souldiers are brought togither againe vnder their ensignes, after that they are once returned home: and especially how hard it is for the Emperour, who is constrained to make warre rather with auxiliarie Souldiers, then with his owne, who also cannot come to succour him without some time, and the meeting togither of circuites and dietes, which are to be holden, before any thing can be done.

The Transiluanian
is likewise to
feare the same
Emperour.

And thus vpon these reasons that haue beeene set downe, it may be concluded verie resolutely, that to make peace on this fashion, would not onely not be helpefull to the two Princes, but also much more daungerous and pernicious to both their estates, for that the enemie may shortly after take vp arms againe, and renew the warre with greater aduaantage, whensoeuer hee shall thinke it fit and conuenient for him.

T

§ V.

The third part

s. V.

THE third and last consideration, which appertaineth not so much to the aforesaide Princes, but to all Christendome together, is, that suppose the Turk do make peace, and keepe it for a while, where may we thinke in reason, that hee will hereafter direct his arrowes? For we haue established this for a most certaine ground and foundation, that the Ottoman Empire doth keepe her Subiects alwayes occupied and emploied in new warres, against some state or other, as hauing had her originall and main-tenance by force and armes.

Of truth it is not to be thought, that he will renue the warre against the King of Persia, at the least as yet, and not being prouoked thereunto: because the Souldiers of Europe, who are the sinewes and strength of his Armies, doe abhorre to go thither, by reason of the length of the iourney, the want of vittailles, the roughnesse of the wayes, and the braue valour of the Persians. And so much the leſſe is it likely that he will renue the warre there, because it is but a while agoe since hee made peace with that king, and for that he hath not as yet fullic establiſhed the foundations of his new Fortresses. And to bee briefe, the Persian indeed wanteth no Souldiers for there are three sortes of Souldiers that goe to warre vnder him: The *Turcomanni*, who are vnto him as Feudataries be with vs, and hold their landes of him. The *Corizzi*, or *Coridschi*, who are stipendiaries and waged by him: and *Auxiliaries*, who are such as come to ayd and succour him, and namely

Where it is
likely the Turk
will bend his
forces next.

Not against
the king of
Persia.

of the Ottoman.

70

ly, the Armenians, the Georgians, and others all verie valiant and hardie, especially those that goe to warre on horsebacke, as all of them for the most part doe, which is the greatest imperfection in the Persian Armies.

s. VI.

Neither is it to bee thought, that hee will moue ^{Nor against} the king of ^{the} Africa, against *Mulei Ameth* the king ^{Fez and Maroc} of *Fez* and *Marocco*, whome the Moores call the co. ^{The Siriffo of} *Siriffo*, which signifieth as much with the Turkes, Africa, as the title of Sultan, v.z. King and Lorde. For in so doing, hee shall get but little, and much hee may loose, besides that, hee shall be somewhat too farre from home. Moreouer *Mulei Ameth*, who was the Brother of *Abdala* and of *Mahomet*, is a man very hardy and warlike: insomuch as although to diuer the suspition, which his Brother *Abdala* had conceiued against him, while he raigned, and was King, hee shewed himselfe euē for all the worlde as the Ottoman *Mahomet* did, to auoide the wrath and displeasure of his Father, altogether geuen to pleasures and sensualitie, yet did hee afterwardes conquer the Kingdome of *Gago*, towards *Guiney*: ^{The kingdom of Gago.} from whence there is brought the most fine & pure gold xxiiii. ^{The finest} *Caractes*: and holdeth in possession al gold. ^{The} that parte of the Countrey, which is more then a hundred dayes iourney from the Ocean sea, euē aboue *Tripoli*.

T 2

Nor

The third part

§ VII.

Nor against the Isle of *Malta*, because (as *A-*
murath was aduised by *Sinan Cicala*, whilest he
was Generall of the Sea) it would turne to the sinal
credite and reputation of the Ottoman Empire, to
employ so huge Forces against so small an Island, &
so much the rather, because it might peraduenture
fall out, that hee should neuer obtaine the possessi-
on thereof, or at least it would bee verie hard to get
it, aswell in regard that it is now much better forti-
fied and strengthned then it was in the dayes of *Sol-
liman*: as also because it would bee very couragi-
ously defended by the auncient brauery of those
most valiant knightes, and sooner relieved and suc-
coured by the Christian Princes, who are now
well taught and instructed thereto by their former
experience.

§ VIII.

Nor against
Spaine.
Insurrecion
of the More-
coes.

Nor yet against *Spaine*, vpon a vaine hope, that
the Moores which are there, woulde make
an insurrection and rebell against the King: For
it is not true (as some thinke), that they are so readie
to put in execution, as indeed they are all confedera-
ted to desire innovation, yea so much the lesse may
the Turke hope for any such insurrection, for that
the said Morecoes are diuided in many seuerall
places, which places are also verie open and with-
out strength: they are also ynarmed, and a people
of

of the Ottoman.

71

of no certaine faith: and therefore in such a case they
will not be ouer-hastie, and specially for feare of loo-
sing their wealth and riches.

As concerning the Portugals and the Aragonians &
Aragonians,
Portugals &
Aragonians.
Bassae, it seemed that the King Catholike might
stand in some feare: the truth is, that they are not
only humbled by a tollerable kinde of inforce-
ment, but euen of their owne selues they haue ap-
plied and settled their mindest to an honest necessitie.
Moreouer, those that haue good intelligence in
matters of state, doe knowe full well, that to lend the
eare to the aduices and encouragement of Out-
lawes and discontented persons, is a verie vaine
thing, and oftentimes proueth verie daungerous.

Besides it is verie likely and credible, that the
Turke will verie well bethinke himselfe, before hee
will rashly run to prouoke and stirre vp the grea-
test king in the world against him, notwithstanding
that hee bee greatly busied and occupied in other
wars: as wel for that if he should be molested by the
Ottoman forces, he may very easily cōclude a peace,
or at least suspension from warres with his enemies,
as also because he is so mighty a Prince, that he may
wel quite himselfe against the Turks, especially with
his Armada, and Fleete of ships, which without en-
crease of any expences vnto him, he may cause eu-
erie yeare in good time to scour the *Ottoman* Seas.
For out of all doubt, he is not inferiour to the Turk,
neither in forces, nor in greatnessse of Empire. Con-
sidering that the Turkish Empire (if notwithstanding
it be lawfull to call that state an Empire, which
is

The Turkes
Empire.

The third part

In Asia.
In Africa.
In Europe.
In Islands.
The Empire of the King of Spaine.

is vnduly usurped and kept from the lawfull Emperours) is in deede verie huge and great , for that in *Aſia* it possesseth all that is betweene the greater Sea, and the Ocean of *Arabia* and *Perſia*: and from the Caspian Sea, and the riuver *Araſis*, and the other more Easterly confines of the Kingdome of *Perſia*, euuen vntill the Mediterranean Coastes of the *Helleſpont* as farre as *Nilus*. And in *Africa*, all the coast of *Nilus*, till ye come beyond *Algieri*, and also a great part within the land of this prouince , where it bordereth vpon *Egypt*, and the red Sea. And in *Europe*, all that Countrey which is from *Buda* euuen to *Caſtantinople*, and betweene the riuver *Niefro*, and the *Danow*, and the *Ægean* Sea, and the *Adriatike*, with all the coast of the greater Sea, as farre as *Tana*. Besides all the Islands of *Aſia*, and the greatest part of the Islands of *Greece*. And yet notwithstanding, the Empire of the most potent king of Spain is nothing inferiour vnto it, for it stretcheth her power and iurisdiction in the Welt, it inlargeth the confines of her most mightie estate in the East, and passing ouer the new world, and arriuing euuen to the Islands of the *Moluccas*, the vttermost part of the Orientall Islands it reacheth (like a true Monarchie indeede) ouer all those maritimall or Sea-parts as farre as the straite of *Gibraltar*.

Neither truly is it likely (as some thinke) that he will mone warre against the *Polackes*, or against the *Tartarians*, or against the *Moscouites*.

§ IX.

Nor against
Polonia.

Not against the *Polackes*, because they are (as a man may say) in the verie bowels of the Turkish estate

the Ottoman.

72

estate. They are verie wel armed both with men and horse : and if they doe posseſſe *Moldavia*, and *Walachia* (as easily they may doe) and then passe ouer the *Danow* into *Bulgaria*, they may fortifie the banks of *Danow*, as the Romans did, and hardly pierce with their Armes, euuen into *Conſtantinople*, which is the verie heart of his Empire, and so vtterly ruinate and destroy all his Country, with the ſame brauerie and valour which the *Polackes* haue ſundry times ſhewed when they warred with the *Turkes*.

§ X.

Not against the *Tartarians*, because they are of ^{Nor against} *Tartaria*. the ſelue ſame Religion with him, and alſo his confederates : with whom if he ſhould warre, hee ſhould gaine either little or nothing of them, becauſe they are but poore , and for the moſt liue abroad in the fieldes , ſo that whenſoever they ſhall perceiue the approach of their enemie, they may eaſily retire themſelues, and when the enemy is deparred, recouer that which was lost. And finally, if the *Turke* ſhall keepe and maaintaine them as his friends, he may reape many and great ſeruices at their hands, whereas on the contrarie, if hee hold them his enemieſ, they may worke him much harme.

§ XI.

AND laſtly, not againſt the *Moscouites*, because ^{Nor yet againſt} *Moscouie*. they dwell among frozen Ices , and fennie Marriſhes, in a barren Countrey , farre diſtant and diuided.

The third part

diuided from all his estates : whose Prince is continually enuironed and garded with a great number of Horsemen and Footemen , who are also very well trained and exercised in managing and handling the Arcubuse.

But either a. against Venice or against all Italie.
If then it be a matter in reason not to be feared, that though he shoulde conclude a peace, he would moue warre against any of these aboue mentioned, yet of a certaintie we may greatly feare, that he will resolute to bend his forces, either against the state of Venice, or against all Italie.

§ XII.

If against Ve-
nice: the what
trouble to
Christendome
By example
of Grecia.

IF against the state of Venice: in verie truth , the troubles of Christendome, would then be greater then now they are, because the nearer the daunger woulde thereby be vnto Italie, and vnto the verie state of Religion , so much the more considerable and troublefom would it be. The Princes of Grecce because they did not succour the princes that were their next neighbours, who were exposed and open to the Ottoman forces , all of them wholy lost their estates : God himselfe in the meane while permitting the same to be effected, not onely for their riot and voluptuoufnesse, and for the ciuill discords that were among them, but also yea and much more for the Schisme , which the Greekes had made in the holy Church, so that first by the Gotthes, then by the Bulgarians , afterwardes by the Sarracens, and last of all by the Turkes, they were brought to that lamentable miserie wherein now they are: even as Pope *Nicholas* the fist foretold, when he writ to the Emperour

of the Ottoman.

73

Emperour *Constantine*, surnamed the Dragon, as *Gennadius* the Patriarke of *Constantinople* hath obserued, and I in another place haue touched more at large . Cardinall *Bessarion* writing to the Princes of *Italie*, sayeth, that because they would not in time relieue *Constantinople*, onely with 50. thousand Crownes, they were the caufe and chiefe occasion, why the Turkes afterwardes, hauing gotten possession thereof, with a continuall course of perpetuall victories, subdued *Tribisonda*, *Sinope*, the Islande of *Metelino*, (i. *Mitylene*,) *La Morea*, *Caramania*, and the Countries adioyning, *Bossina*, *Bulgaria*, the Lower *Hungarie*, *Epirus*, and a great part of *Dalmatia*, of *Albania*, and of *Sclavonia*, and lastly of the Island of *Negroponte*.

And of Con-
stantinople.
Pope Urbanes
exhortation to
moue christen-
dome to the
recoverie of
Ierusalem.
ta.
John Capestrano,
who had already gathered together 40. thousande no.
signed and marked with the Crosse, to goe against
the

V

The third part

the Turkes, euen in the very selfe same countreyes where now the warre is : And lastly, forasmuch as besides the holy and very zealous exhortations of many Popes, and other holy Men, (whereof there is great store to bee founde in the Councils, and ecclesiastical Hystories) there resoundeth now in our time ouer all Christendome, the liuely voyce of the now liuing Pope *Clement*, who like another *Jacob*, watching day and night, without any tyring or wearinesse, for the seruice and maintenance of *Labans* sheepe, that is to say, of the faithfull flocke of Iesus Christ, cryeth out with a loude voyce, by his holie prayers and deuoute teares to the Lord for mercie towardes our saluation and safegard : It shal bee sufficient at this present, briefly to recount the substance of those matters, which pope *Pius* the second, (euen the same that wrote a long letter to *Mahamed* the second Emperour of the Turkes to conuerthim vnto the Catholike Faith) being full of the holy Ghost, vttered at the Councell of *Mantua*, in presence of the Christian Princes, after hee had bewayled the ruine of the Greeke Empire, and of other kingdomes in Christendome, that were fallen into the Turkes power, v.z.

Pope Clement
the eight.

The substance
of the speech
of Pius the se-
cond in the
Councell of
Mantua.

Surely, it would bee a verie righteous and religious matter, O yee most generous and Noble Princes of Christendome, if once at the last yee would waken your selues, & enter into an earnest cogitation, not to suffer those poore & dismayed reliques of Christians, utterlie to bee lost, that are forgone into the most cruell rage of the Barbarians, which of you, in good sooth doth not clearly and manifestly see the common and imminent daunger, that hangeth

of the Ottoman.

74

geth ouer our heades! Andrinopolis, and Nicopolis, (because I will not at this time remember so many other most goodly and rich Countries, which most vnjustly that most cruell and outragious Tyrant doth now possesse) were of no long time heretofore, Cities further distant, then were those Christians that haue beeene lately taken, and are now most cruelly and miserably tormented by our enemies. Ob that you might bee moued yee religious and godly Princes, with the incomparable bond and obligation, wherein yee are bound to Christ our Lord, who hath not onely freed and delivred you from the iawes of the auncient Serpent, but also hath appointed you to be Princes of his people, to the end that like watchfull and charitable Pastors ye should courageously keepe the same from the mouth of the Wolfe. The blessed God hath put into your handes the Scepter, and the sworde, because it shoulde bee your care, as well by doing iustice, and shewing mercie to maintaine his people in peace, as also by warre to deliuer those that are vnduly and unjustly oppressed. Let your particular interestes cease, when the Interestes of God commeth in place. Let the discourses of mans wit give place to the cause of God. Nay rather, euen your owne peculiar and proper interestes, and humane respects also do perswade you of themselues to take weapons into your hands, and to represso and daunt the pride of this most cruell and fierce wilde beast, who like a Lion raungeth about continually, ouer all the Champaine and field of Christendome, greedily to devoure some part either of our owne Countries, or of our neighbours. Alas, let vs learne by other mens expences and losses. Let vs quench the fire of our brethren, least we burne up our selues also with them: Let vs intime meeete with this great tide, that like a headlong streame is like shortly to surrounall our Countreys. Vp ye

V 2

generous

The third part

generous & noble champions of Christ, resolute couragiously with your selues (to the end that our age be not thought to be less glorious then former times) in some sort to imitate & follow Godfrey, Baldwyn, Boemound, and those other famous Argonautes, who to recover out of the prophanie handes of the enemies of holy saylh, the sacred Sepulchre of our Redeemer, sold their owne proper goodes, abandoned their landes and houses, passed ouer the seas, and for a long time endured exceeding great trauailes and troubles, because they thought that they could not better employ their treasures, ther weapons, and their valour, then in so holy and laudable an enterprise, who then will bee the first man that will take the Crosse, and give example to others? Who will he be, that will be Captaine and guide herein? Where be the Souldiers of Christ, that will follow this glorious standard and Ensinge? And finally who will shew himselfe so impious, that he will not lay aside all priuate iuris and hatreds, for the common safeties?

But hereof let it be inough for me to haue spoken, being carried therunto out of my determinate discourse and narration, by a iust zeale that I bear e towardesthe honour of God, and the saluation of so many soules, which are redeemed by the bloud of Christ, and liue at this day in the most miserable thralldome and slauerie of the Ottoman Empire.

And therefore if the great Turke shoulde mooue warre agaynst the Common-wealthe of Venice: (which God forbid, because the saide estate of the Venetians doth deserue to bee kept and preserued a perpetuall Virgin through all ages, as well for the comfort of her subiects, for the ornament of the worlde, and for the defence of Christen-

Why Venice
should bee re-
lieued.

of the Ottoman.

75

Christendome, as also for the pietie thereof, and for the excellent manner of gouernment therein vsed) the daunger would be of great importaunce, and it would then bee verie necessarie (if the loue of my Country doe not deceiue mee:) that all the princes of Christendome should earnestly and throughly aduise themselues, how to maintaine it in her former estate, so that no notable damage may light vpon it: and so much the rather, for that enioying her lawfull and auncient libertie and neutralitie, with her publicke consultation it doth neuer offend any Prince in the world. And aboue all the rest, it behoueth the king Catholike so to doe, either by combining himselfe with the Venetians, or by succouring them otherwise: as well because it is verie likely, that the Turke will not imploy his forces, onely for the subduing of the Venetian estate: but thereby to haue a more easie way to attempt Italie, wherof the crowne of Spaine dooth possesse the fairest and goodliest partes: as also because the other Princes are not peraduenture altogether sufficient by Sea to vanquish the enemie with any securitie, vnlesse they shall helpe one another with monies, with vittailes, with Souldiers, & specially with Gally-slaues, and Marriners, which certainly is a matter very considerable: For without doubt the true way & means to deseate and destroy the enemie, will bee to overthrow the Turke, is by sea.

V. 3

The third part

battailes by Sea, both because they are most cruell and daungerous, and also for that in such fights they are alwayes discomfited and ouerthrowne, and doe know full well, that afterwardes they shall bee the more easily vanquished and ouercome by land. So *Euagoras* of Cyprus, and *Conon* of Athens counselled the kings of *Persia* to doe against the Lacedemonians. So *Augustus* hauing defeated *Marcus Antonius* by Sea, subdued also his olde and victorious armie consisting of eightie thousand footemen, and two & twentie thousand horsemen, without any fight. The like was done by *Roger* the Calabrian, Admiral to the king of Aragon, who notwithstanding that his king was vpon the land ouerthrowne by the king of France, yet assaulting the French Armada by Sea, discomfited the same, recovered that which was lost, and carried away the fruities of both the victories. And who knoweth not, what might haue beeene done, after the Turkish fleete was dispersed and ouerthrowne in the yeare, 1571. And when it ranne away of it selfe in 1572. If at the first occasion and oportunitie that was then so happily offered, there had beeene made a choise of the best Gallies, to haue gone presently and met with the enemie in the *Archipelago*, and in *Morea*, and euen as farre as *Cyprus*: and if in the second good oportunitie we had followed the happy and iudicious courage of *Soranzo*, the generall Prouidatorie of *Venice*?

The strength and power of day become so potent and mightie, not only in respect of the great store of golde which it hath gathered in this long peace, and of the debts payed, where-

of the Ottoman.

76

whereunto it had runne in the last warre, and somewhat before that time: but also in regarde of the manie Gallyes, munitions, and other preparations for warre, which it hath prouided in this time: that if occasion so fall out, it will peraduenture bee well able to defend it selfe of it owne selfe: and specially, if it would resolute it selfe at such time, as it dooth little feare the enemie, to bee the first that should assault and strike him, yea and to doe it indeed, (as *Alcibiades* was wont to say to the Athenians) by sending forth a mighty Armada to annoye him, and vpon a sodaine to surprise some of those places, which I will name in the ende of this thirde Parte. Moreouer it hath also at this present so wel fortified her estate, that in all reason it neede not greatly doubt the conceites and designementes of the Ottoman. *Corfu*, *Cathara* and *Zara* are among other Fortes esteemed to bee inexpugnable, and so much the rather, for that by reason of their moderate and reasonable distance from *Venice*, they may easily bee succoured and relieved, and being as it were the keyes of the Adriatike Sea, they may also hinder the entrance of the enemy, or enforce him of necessitie to returne backe with all speed, least hee remayne entangled and caught in the nette. The Isle of *Candie* is likewise so wel prouided for defence and is thought to bee so strongly guarded with Garrisons and Munition, as it cannot bee attempted by the Turke, without incurring his great hazard and daunger, yea and so much the more, for that if the enemy shoulde endeavour to disbarke his people there, one great part of the Island hauing no

V 4

Corfu.
Catharo.
Zata

Candie.

The third part

hauen or Harboroughes, is defended by nature it self & the other part may be so well kept both by the valour of forrain souldiers, and also by the braue manhood of the Countrey-inhabitantes, who are no leſſe tender and carefull of their owne wel-fare, then faithfull to their prince (prouided alwayes that they bee by iuft proportion and good aduise distributed and deuided, ſome for the defence of the Hauens, and ſome for the defence of the ſhore,) that hee ſhall neuer bee able to diſbarke there, or if hee doe, it will bee to his great loſſe. In which accident it will bee an eafe matter to diſperſe the Reliques of the enemies armie, partly because they can very hardly bee ſuccoured by the Turke, in regarde of the farre diſtance of his Countrey and States : and partly because his Fleete of Shippes cannot well brooke thoſe Seas, eyther without daunger of breaking and rending in pieces, or fighting with the Venetian Armada. Lastly, the Forte of *Palma*, which is alſo buit by the Venetian Common wealth, with as religious as iudicious an aduife, will not onely ſerue (if it please G O D) at all times for a ſecure and ſafe defence againſt the enemie, if hee ſhoule bee ſo bolde as to trouble *Ifria*, and to paſſe to *Friuli*, but it will alſo bee a continuall and moſt neceſſarie a Bulwarke, againſt all the Barbarians, which may attempte to come and annoy *Italie*. And thus muſt bee ſaide touching the State of *Venice*.

If againſt all
Italie, then
which way
the Turk may
come thither.

Now touching *Italie*, for ſomuch as I haue already
heretofore touched the reaſons, which might one day
move

of the Ottoman.

77

moue the Ottoman to thinke of ſuch a course, I will in this place ſet downe the moſt principall wayes, whereby he may come thither, and that to anſwere to ſuch persons as doe thinke the ſame not onely to be a verie difficult matter, but almost aliogether imposſible.

§ XIII.

THE Turke hath two wayes, whereby he may Two waies for the Turke to paſſe into Italie by land. paſſe from his owne Countreys and States into Italy by land: one is (and that is the better way for the eafe of his horſemen) by departing from *Belgrado* through the higher way, which is betweene the riuers of *Draua* and *Sava*: the other on this ſide of the *Sava*. Both of theſe wayes doe meeet at *Lubiana*, called by the Dutche *Luback*, and in olde time *Nauporto*, a Countrey of great abundance in allthinges, and moſt fit to bee (as it were) the ſeat of the warre. The Citie it ſelfe is verie eafe to bee ſurprized. From hence they may goe to *Goritia*, or rather by *Piuca* to paſſe by the *Carſe* aboue *Montefolton*: both theſe wayes likewiſe doe meeet at *Lisonzao*, which the Turkes cal *Aque-bianche*, or White waters, a riuer that is verie memorabe for the batteyle of *Theodorico* king of the Gothes, and of *Odoacre* king of the *Hernli*, and alſo for the laſt approach of the Turkes, when they arriued euuen as farre as *San-Cassano* in *Melco* vpon the *Campardo*, burning and ſpoyleing all the Countrey with moſt barbarous crueltie. That way which leadeth to *Goritia*, is for vitaille and for horſe, more commodious then this of *Carſe*: which for all that, though it be verie ſtonie

X

nie

The third part

nie and rockie , and also that in the *Piuca* there bee some wooddes and straits, not so easie to be passed, being neare to *Scelesnytabor*, which is a holde kept by a few Clownes , yet notwithstanding the saide way is not vnpalsible for horses, and was made by

Why Theodo-
dorico builded
Montfalcon.

Attila, when he came to *Trieste*, and passed on to *Aquileia*. And hereupon it came that *Theodorico*, after he was become the Lord and conquerour of Italie, was moued in this way to fortifie *Mont-falcon*: euen as *Gradisca*, a little while before , was erected and builded in the other way by *Odoacre*, when hee lorded it in Italie. A fortresse which was afterwardes surprised by the same *Theodorico*, when he was sent against *Odoacre*, by *Zeno* the Emperour, and which was also erected for the selfe same ende and purpose, for which the Seigneurie of Venice haue now builded *Pulma* against the Turkes.

And Odoacre
Gradisca.

And the Ve-
netians,
Palma.

Another way
for the Turke
to come into
Italie.

The Turkish Armies, departing from *Constantinople*, without comming to *Mandor-Alba*, or *Alba-Graca*, (which is called *Belgrado*, and in times past *Taurono*) may also come into one of these wayes, by passing through the townes of *Nis*, and *Precup*, where are certaine straites on this side of *Sophia*, and leauing *Belgrado* on the right hand : or else without touching *Sophia* to meeete in any sort at *Nosibazar*, and from thence through the Dukedom of *Herzegonina* in *Bafna*, at *Bagnalucca*, to meeete at the last euen in the high way , a little more then two dayes iourneys distant from the territorie of Venice, and very neere vnto those places, where somtimes the Turks made their musters when they came into Italy. This is a verie plaine and euen way, fit also for carriages,

and

of the Ottoman.

78

and for conueyng of stiffe and artillarie . Where-
vpon *Ammianus Marcellinus* reporteth, that by the
same way *Gallus* the brother of *Julian* was carried in
a Chariot from *Betouia* to *Pola*.

¶ XIII.

Moreouer, the Turke, to the ende hee might
the more grieuously vexe and trouble Italie,
How the Turk
may annoy
Italie both by
land and sea
at one tyme.
may at one and the selfe same time , sende an Ar-
mie by land into one part of it , and an Armada by
Sea into another. So thought the other *Mahamet* to
haue done, & this Turke also that now is, was there
unto perswaded the last yeare by *Sinan* , of purpose
by that meanes the rather to diuert the king of
Spaine, and the State of Venice, that is to say, by his
fleete troubling and molesting the Adriatike Sea,
euen iust in the same sort as is afore declared , and
Otranto.
his armie assailing the coasts of Sicilie and Naples,
or of a *Calabria* and *Puglia* , replenishing all those
quarters with feare and dominage. There is yet
fresh in memorie the surprising of *Otranto* by the
Turkes, in the dayes of the other *Mahamet*, and the
fearefull fright which the Court of Rome did
sometimes take at the arriuall of the *Ottoman* nauie,
in the Tyrhene sea. For costing all along Italie with
the land windes, the Easterne winde, the South-East
winde, and the South winde, and comming out of
Barbarie with a North-east winde, and a Western
Examples of
windes, hee may most easily ouerrunne all, even as Augusto
Cotrone, Rego
farre as *Civita Vecchia*. Besides that it is well knowne
X 2
what the Turks haue done diuers times at *Augusta*, at
Sant-Angelo, Cotrone,

The third part

Cotrone, at Reggio, and in more auncient times what the Saracens did at Mount Gargano, now called Sant' Angelo.

I know verie well how hard a matter it will be for the Turkes to put in execution those Desaignments, which I haue touched before to that purpose in the second Part of this Discourse: for that (to be briefe) this most noble Province of Italie, being the Garden and pleasure of the world, is without all doubt so well fortified both by Nature and Art: so full of Gold, and people, and vittailles also: (especially if by Gods punishment, or by some other accident the haruests do not prove so barren as they haue beeene these last yeares:) and lastly so carefully kept and governed by her Catholike and valourous Princes as a man may resolutely conclude, that if the Turke do come thither, either he shall retire and returne, as heretofore diuerse his elders and predecessours haue done, or else Italy shall become his Graue and Sepulchre, euen as it hath alwayes beeene to all Barbarians. But for as much as it is the office of true Politike prudence to feare an enemie, not thereby to become a Da-
stard, or a Coward (as Thucydides sayd) but with all diligence and circumspection to procure and prouide such remedies, as may vanquish and ouerthrow him: I will briefly set downe, how wee may diuise wayes meete with those and such other daungers, that may hang ouer Italie by reason of the Ottoman Armies, and also what remedies may be most profitable and effectuall in this present warre, and therefore are greatly feared by the Turks themselves.

§ X V.

A mong other remedies, that were proposed, when Mahomet the second surprise Otranto,

(as

The pleasure
strength, and
government
of Italie.

The aduice of
Thucydides to
thinke vpon
daungers.

of the Ottoman.

79

(as I toldē you) to diuerte him from Italie, one Martin de Segoni Bishoppe of Dulcigno, as wee reade in a Treatise that hee wrote thereof to Pope Sixtus the Fourth, propounded this present remedy, Italie.

which it delighteth mee to report in his owne verie wordes. Pannorum Rex (sayeth hee) cum suo Exercitu, confederatisque populis, presentet se ad Danubium, fama precedente quod in Rasciam sit trajecturus: futurum inde omnium Turcorum multitudine sibi obuiā ad Istrii trajectum progrediente, Gentes nuper Valonam & ad alia Epiri maritima loca misse, ad Italiam transfretanda, statim ob metum Pannorum ad castra Turchi reuocentur. That is to say, Let the King of Hungarie with his Armie and Confederates present himselfe at the Danowe, with a fame and rumor first geuen out, that hee is minded to passe ouer into Rascia: and thereupon will it come to passe, that al the Turkes multitude proceeding to meet with him at the paassage of the (Danowe whēre it is called) Ister, the souldiers which were lately sent to Valona, and to other maritimall places of Epirus, of purpose to bee transported into Italie, presently for feare of the Hungarians, shall be called backe to the Turkes Campe.

Now wee hauing in steade of the king of Hungarie, the Emperour, and the Prince of Transyluania, I will discourse to the same purpose, as well of the one as of the other, so far forth as shall bee sufficient most clearely to make knowne, what hinderance and detriment it would bee to Christendome, if these two Princes should make peace with the Turke, at the least so speedily as it is doubted.

X 3

ted

Counsell to
make a diuert-
ing waire.

The third part

Hannibal.
K.Hieron.

ted they will : because among all the good meaneſ that may bee vſed to ſecure a ſtate from their moſt miſtchie enemys, there is none ſo ſafe and approoued by great Captaines then this courſe of diuerting warre. As among others Hannibal told Antiochus when hee aduised him to ſet vpon Macedonia, to the end King Philip might not ſend ayde to the Ro- maines : and Hieron King of Syracusa, when hee aduised the Romanes to ſet vpon Africa, to the end the Carthaginians might not ſend ſuccours to Hannibal in Italie.

§ XVI.

Why the Emperour ſhould not make peace with the Turk **T**HE Emperour hath already his weapons in hand : and although indeed hee haue loſt ſome places, yet hee hath alſo gotten ſome others. The warre is not altogether inconuenient or incomodious, by reaſon of the neareneſſe thereof. The Souldiers haue now begunne to enure themſelues to the warres, and to take courage againſt the horri-ble ſhoutinges and outrices of the Enemie, and are alreadie accuſtomed to endure cold and frost. The Captaines haue learned the Militarie Discipline, and the manner of fighting with the Turkes : if our Souldiers iſſue foorth into the field before our enemies, wee may attempt to recouer eyther by ſiege, or ſurprise ſome of thoſe places that haue beeſe loſt : yea and ſo much the rather, for that it will bee a harde matter for the Turkes to ſuccour it, because thoſe that are gone home to their houſes, cannot in time returne in ſo great a multitude for want

of the Ottoman.

80

want of graſſe and vittailles : and thoſe that remaine in the frontiers are not able and ſufficient both to offend and defend. Moreouer, there is not a ſmall number of thoſe, that haue refuſed to ſtay in Hungarie, because they had not wherewith to liue, and because they would auoyde the diſtemperature of that colde ayre, which will vſe all their arte and cunning to ſtay at home.

Let vs adde hereunto, that now is the onely time, The Princeſ of Germanie to ayde the Emperour. wherein it is to bee hoped, that all the Princeſ of Germanie, both great and ſmal, wil waken and rouse themſelues in earnest, because it is not now ſo much in queſtion to defende the Hungarians, who are na- turaſly hated by the Dutch (as many other Nations doe alſo hate one another) as it is to defend themſelues, their wiues, their children, and their owne riches. In which point, if they conceyue peraduen- ture, that they might keepe and enjoy al theſe things aforefaid, more ſafely and ſecurely vnder the go- uernement of the Turke, they may bee verie eaſily certiſed of the trueth of this their conceit, when they ſhall beholde the Tragicall ſpectacles of Greece, which ſince it hath beeſe vanquished by the Turks, hath remained like the Iewes, without King, without Scepter, without libertie, without titles, without riches, yea, and (a moſt horri-ble matter to re- port) euen without the comfort of the tender em- bracements of their ownen naturall children.

Whereas, if the warre continue, who can with any reaſon doubt, but that the Princeſ of the Em- pire ſhall of neceſſitie be enforced earnestly to aliſt and ayde both the Emperour and themſelues? be- cause

The lamenta- ble ſtate of Greece.

Reasons to con- tinue the warre.

The third part

cause it is in all likelihoode to be feared, that *Mahamet* will set forward his Armie either towards *Tocca*, or purpose to hinder the vniion of the Emperour and the Transyluanian, or to *Vienna*, as he was perswaded to haue done, not long ago by *Sinan*, who shewed vnto him the easinesse of winning it, the glorie that would redound vnto him thereby, and the great importance of the enterprise : *And also for that from the languishing of the head proceedeth the weaknesse of the members.* And it may be, that he commaunded his armie to retyre out of *Croatia*, not onely because he knew the ialousie which the Italian Princes doe carrie of their owne affaires, and specially the Venetians, who in that respect haue put themselues in defence with their new fortresse of *Palma*: but also because hee would vnite all his forces togither, & so become the stronger to performe the said enterprise. But howsoever it bee, certaine it is that he hath not withdrawne it for any gifte or rewardes which he hath receiuied from the Venetians, as some haue falsly beleeuued. Againe, that wee may thinke the better of this daunger, it is a matter worthie of good consideration, that *Mahamet* was enclined to this enterprise from his childhooде, in so much as euен at that time hee made humble supplication to his father, that hee would reserue that glorie for him: which without all doubt, if (as God forbid) it should so fall out and come to passe indeed, would not onely proue to bee a most notable losse to the Empire, but also in particular to all Italie. For so hauing gotten the possession of that key, which is of greatest importaunce to open him the way

Tocca.
Vienna.

Why the Turk
withdrew his
armie out of
Croatia.

of the Ottoman.

81

way into the entrance of all those Countries, he shall also haue a more readie and easie passage into the fairest and goodliest part of the world, which is the verie vttermost scope and end of all the *Ottoman* de-signements. For that, euen as he hath a free way to come to *Vienna*, by passing betweene the *Danow* and *the Draua*, in lower Hungarie, and so without any impediment to *Giauerino* (a Fort, that by the aduice of *Alfonso* Duke of *Ferrara* was caused to be made at the verie selfe same time that *Soliman* arriuied there by the selfe same way, and where at this day also, being possessed by the Turks in maner and sort (as *Philippe Pigafetta* hath written) they may easily passe to trouble and vexe both *Austria*, and *Stiria*.) So if hee should be possessed of *Vienna*, hee may without all Turke (if hee doubt the more easily assault Italie by two other wayes, which I haue not as yet named. The one is, by the way of *Tiroll*, descending by the Alpes of *Trento* into the Champaignes of *Verona*, where *Alarico* entered: or by thole of *Bassano*, which is a way that hath beene often vsed by the Dutche: the other is, that of *Villaco*, whch commeth directly from *Vienna*, and meeteth either at *Frioli*, or at *Venzone*, or at *Ciuidale*. The Turkes also in such a case may take another way, which was heretofore made by the Barbarians, that is to say, the way of *Tolmezo* in *Carnia*, which may also meeet at *Cadore*: but that shall not be to any great purpose for them.

But for as much as among those things, which hinder the Emperour from such aydes and succours as he desireth and as without all doubt would be most fit and conuenient for this present busynesse, there are three especially that are worthy

The third part

worthy of greatest consideration: it shall not be amisse to touch them.

s. XVII.

The speches
that hinder
the Emperour
from necessary
aydes of the
Christian
Princes: }

THe first thing is, the voice that runneth amongst the many Protestants of the Empire: that if his Imperial Maiesie should become the conqueror of the Turke, they shall bee of necessitie enforced to yeeld obedience to the Pope of Rome (as they call him) a matter that is abhorred by the common sort of people, but much more by the great Princes and Potentates there: by the great Princes especially, because they haue usurped a dominion vpon the greatest Ecclesiastical liuings and reuenues: by the common people, because they are perswaded therewerto by the Protestant Ministers, as namely by the Caluinists and Lutherans, who doe resolutely aduise them rather to obey the Turke then the Pope, and therefore Caluanisme is a kind of disposition to Mahametisme, as many very learned men haue written. Besides that both the great Potentates, & also the common Subiects there haue suffered themselues most easily to be perswaded to this impietie and vngodlinessse, onely in regarde of the most sensuall and licencious life, which they are thereby permitted to lead. The second thing is (which is so peremptorily disputed by many) that the Emperor is to make peace with the Turke, because the Empire sheweth it selfe so backewarde and faint to relieu him: as well for that it feareth to spend her treasure to no purpose, as also

of the Ottoman.

82

also for that it being of it selfe inclined to peace, The backewardnes of the Empire in relieving the Emperour. it doeth willingly take aduaantage of this occasion: which also ministreth matter to many Christian Princes, especially to the Polack, and to the Venetians, that they doe not stirre eyther little or much against the Turke, because they suspect they shall bee abandoned and forsaken, when the cause is at the best, and that they shall spend themselves without any gaine or profite. And it seemeth that it is made the more credible by this, for that it is malitiously giuen out and published to the world by those Imperialists, which haue no greate inclination towards that most religious house of Austria, v^r. That the Emperour is not greatly inclined to warre: That hee keepeth himselfe continually retyred in Bohemia, in Prague, in his pallace because hee feareth some violent death: wherunto hee is the rather induced eyther by reason of the conspiracie which was lately discouered, or of that which a certaine Englishman called *Dee*, foretold M. John Dee. him (a matter in sooth no lesse superstitious then vnworthie to bee apprehended and beleued by a Prince that is so wise and feareth God.) But certaintly if it were true, that the Emperour either for these or for som other reasons did now incline toward peace, it had beene a more safe counsell and aduise for him, to haue resolued on it, euen in the beginning and at the first, rather then at this time, in regarde of such reasons as I haue heretofore declared, and also more at large in a certaine discourse, which I haue made vpon this point euen to this day. And thus also was Archduke *Ferdinando* aduised by *Peter*

The third part

The aduise of
Pete: the Vauoode of Moldavia, who if he had not dy-
ed in the yeare 1594. in the mountaines of Bolzano
was vitterly resolued (though hee was a man of the
Greekish sect and religion) to haue come and kissed
the feet of our Pope, as I haue declared in due order
and place.

The thirde and last thing is, That if the Empire on the one side bee not willing to contribute to so great expenses, vnlesse the Conquestes made by the Imperiall prin- that may bee made and atchieued, become vntited to the Empire it selfe: and if the Emperour on the other side will not consent thereunto, by reason of the pretences and challenges, which hee hath to Hungarie, being a state of his own, it seeneth that both the one partie and the other, doe propound matters so difficult, that none of them are likely to bee effected. True it is, that wee ought to thinke and belieue that the Emperour knoweth full well, if hee should shew himselfe contented to doe that which the Imperiall Princes doe request at his handes, hee should thereby preiudice himselfe, & yet those Princes would afterwardes forbear to doo that in deedes, which they offer in wordes. And thus much let bee sayde touching the Emperour.

XVIII.

The Prince of Transyluania, who may now serue (as the Second Champion) instead of the former King of Hungarie, there is no doubt to be made, but that hee is both in religi-
on

of the Ottoman.

83

on and in heart a most fierce and eage re enemy agaynst the Turkes. That which hee hath done hitherto, (say what they list of him, such as either are not well informed or too affectionate and passionate in the cause) doth yeeld vnto all the world a most cleare and manifest testimonie, that hee is no lesse braue in bestirring himselfe to fight, and resolute in his courses, then fortunate in his actions, and euen such a one as the auncients required a Captaine to be. And this not by the fauour of fabulous fortune, but in truth by the grace of that Lord, who in the holy Scriptures is called the Lord of Hostes, by whom like a new *Danid* or *Iudas Machabeus*, hee is louingly defended and protected. He is also greatly feared of the Turkes by reason of certaine popular and common predictions of theirs, which al- though they be in deed but light and vaine, yet doe they make a great impreſſion in the mindes of barbarous and base people, and specially of the Mahometanes, who do absolutely beleue *Fatum*, or Deſtinie. Among these their diuinations and Foreboodings, they hold this one to be of great account and reckoning, which saith, I hat from the clifffes of the Mountaines of Transyluania, there shall one day come forth a Prince, who shall ouercome and bring to nothing the Ottoman Empire. So saith *Flavius Vopiscus*, in the life of the Emperour *Florian*, That in his dayes it was prophecied of an Hungarian prince which in time should reduce all the Barbarians vnder his commaund and gouernment. And the like also is read in *Suetonius Tranquillus* of the Emperour *Galba* (For neuer yet did Princes want their flatterers.)

Why the
Turks feare
him.

A Prophecie
of the Turkes
for Transyl-
uania.

Y 3

More-

The third part

Another prophecie touchinge the end of Mahamets feare.
Moreouer the Turkes doe also constantly beleue, that the Sect of *Mahomet* is not to last any longer then for a thousand yeares, which tearme according to our computation cannot be farre of: and that the *Musulmani*, (for so the Mahametists doe call them selues, that is *Truly religious people which beleue aright*) are not to haue aboue fourteene or fifteene Emperours: and therefore they do greatly erre, that recken seuenteeene of them at this day. This *Mahomet*, who now liueth may bee reckoned the fourteenth or fifteenth: for *Mose* or *Musa* (as they call him) some doe reckon him among them, and some doe not. Lastly it is also most true, that the Turkes doe greatly feare the Transyluanian, and in that respect doe diuerse and sundrie wayes endeavour, not onely most diuelishly to weaken that valorous courage, which he sheweth against them, but also to deprive him of his life: persuading themselues for certaintie (besides all that which hath beene touched before) that he hath secrete intelligences, euen with in the Citie of *Constantinople*, to ouerthrow that estate: & that if his glorie & renown do encrease, the matter will easily be brought to passe, for that he is so willingly followed and accompanied by the Transyluanians themselues, who doe most readily obey him, and for that also hee is greatly desired and wiſhed by the Walachians, the Rascians, the Bulgarians, the Sicilians, and all other warlike and hardie Nations to bee their Lord and Maister. And that this is true, I will briefly declare, because I do thinke that for the better vnderstanding of the state of this present warre, it will bee verie necessarie to know.

Why the
Turkes do go
about to be-
cause him of
his life.

of the Ottoman.

84

know what these peoples are.

§ XIX.

THE Transyluanians without all doubt are esteemed to bee the most warlike people of all Europe. Thesetogither with the Moldauians, and Walachians, are the auncient Dacians, whom the Romans so greatly feared: insomuch as when they had ouerthrowne the Armies of the Emperour *Domitian*, the Romanes were forced to pay them tribute vnder the same *Domitian*, vnder *Nerua*, and in the beginning of *Traians Empire*, vpon condition that they should not passe ouer the *Danow* to annoy and endommage their Countries. This is manifestly made knowne to the Turkes themselues, by the discomfitures which many times haue beeene giuen them by *Coruinus*, by the two Battories, and lastly by this third man, who at this day is in warre agaynst them.

Moreouer, *Michael* the Vaiuode of Walacchia, although in times past he held that gouernement of the Turke, yet now he is vnder the obedience of the Transyluanian: and without doubt it standeth him greatly in hand to cōtinue in that protectiō, because hee may not now any longer trust the Turkes, who haue beeene so oftentimes displeased and discontented with him, and specially for the slaughter which he made of those, that vnder his promise of peace were sent by *Hassan Baffa* into Walacchia. Besides the Walachians, whose valour is verie well knowne to the Turkes, when they serued vnder the conduct of

The Transyl-
uanian Na-
tion.

Why the Ro-
mans paied
tribute to the
Dacians.

Michael the
Vaiuode of
Walacchia.

The third part

of Dracola their most valiant Captaine, the said Vai-
uode is attended for Souldiers with many Hunga-
rians and Transyluanians, some few Albanians, Grec-
ians, Bulgarians, and Rascians. Hee hath not many
Arcubusiers, as also the Transyluanian himselfe hath
no great store of them. For all these Nations, and
especially the Hungarians doe vsually fight at hand,
and on horsebacke with Launces, and with a won-
derfull courage shew their faces to their enemies.

The Rascians, who in the Councill of Constance
be called *Sirfi*, are a people that haue their originall
offspring from the upper *Misia*, which now is cal-
led *Seruia* and *Rascia*. They by reason of the Turkish
wars did heretofore retire theselues to the further
side of the *Danow*, and not to this side, as some haue
writte: & at this present they dwel nigh to *Temeuar*,
Lippa, & those parts. They did in times past rebell a-
gainst the Turke & now do serue the Transyluanian.

The Bulgarians, some do inhabite all that Coun-
try which was called the lower *Misia*, even to the
Danow, ouer against *Walachia*: some inhabit *Ibracia*,
together with the Grecians, and others in *Macedo-
nia*, which now also is inhabited with Grecians, with
Seruians, and with Albanians. The Bulgarians are a
braue and valorous people. Some of them that haue
fled out of their owne Countrey, doe serue the
Transiluanian, and no doubt many others woulde
runne also vnto him, if he had sufficient meanes to
entertaine them. They are verie apt to make a tu-
mult and insurrection, as well in their owne Coun-
try, as also among their neighbours, if they were
cherished and heartned thereunto, especially by
the

of the Ottoman.

85

The Prince of Transyluania, whome they do admire no
lesse, then that Alexander the Great, who was compared to
halfe their Countryman, that is to say, *Pella*, a place of
Macedonia: and vnto whome hee hath
with great iudgement beene likened, by *Girolamo
Frachetta* in those orations, which he hath written to
this valourous Prince.

The Siculi or Sicilians, who inhabite the mountaines towards *Polonia* and *Moldavia*, and that parte of the Countrey which is somewhat more hilly, are fierce and sturdie Clownes, resembling the Tartarians, more then any other Christians of those quarters: and therefore they should bee called *Sythuli*: They are rather footmen then horsemen, and haue also some Arcubusiers. They followed the Prince of Transyluania in the yeare 1595. when hee passed into *Walachia* against *Sinan*, at which time the said *Sinan* did most shamefully run away: But hauing receiued a promise of the Prince, that their Noblemen should bee exempted from some subiecction, in regarde of an offer, which they made to conquer as much Countrey more, as that was which they did enjoy: when they perceiued that their intention & his promise was not kept and performed, they rebelled and made an insurrection, while the prince was at *Prage*: but afterwardes with the punishment of some of the Principalles, and two hundred others, they were well quieted and pacifyed.

THE

Z

Why the Siculi
rebelled.

The third part

§ XX.

The Prince of
Transyluania
wanteth mo-
ney.

How his want
is to be sup-
plied.

The Counsell
of Demosthe-
nes to the A-
thenians, apply-
ed to this pur-
pose by the
Author.

~~~  
which can be giuen them for the common good, is  
with all speede to succour and relieue this couragi-  
ous youth (as in part the Pope, & the most religious  
King

THE prince of *Transyluania* doeth not enter-  
tayne and receiue vnder his Ensignes, all those  
peoples that doe thus admire him, and so greatly  
desire him to be their Captaine and Lord: because  
he hath no good meanes for money to pay them :  
for without stipends or wages, it is not possible that  
souldiers can bee satisfied and maintained : neither  
are their spoyles, prayes, and booties sufficient to  
feede them, and keepe them contented , nor their  
Haruestes and Collections, to supply the wantes of  
so great a number, especially in the times of warre,

wherein all things grow from worse to worse. In  
such sorte as I doe conclude, that forasmuch as our  
Christian Princes haue no better means to maintain  
this warre against the Turke, and that in some re-  
mote place, and farre distant from their own coun-  
tryes and States, nor a more easie and safe waye to  
ouercome him, then by obeying and following e-

uen the very selfe same counsell which *Demosthenes*  
gauet to the Athenians, when the people of *Olinthus*  
(a Cittie of *Thracia*) craued their aide and succours  
against *Philip*, the Father of *Alexander*, and King of  
*Macedonie*, at such time as hee went about to assaulte  
them: I will bee also so bold (though not in such e-  
loquent termes as that most famous Oratour did  
use) to tell them, that the fitteſt and meekest counsell

which can be giuen them for the common good, is  
with all speede to succour and relieue this couragi-  
ous youth (as in part the Pope, & the most religious  
King

## *of the Ottoman.*

86

king of Spaine haue done) with some part of those  
treasures which they haue receiued from God, to  
be spent in the seruice of his diuine Maiestie , and  
their owne saluation. For there is no one thing that  
doth more hinder the propagation of the Gospell of  
Iesus Christ, and the good successe of their actions  
against the cōmon enemy, then to want money suf-  
ficient for his necessities, or rather not to make some  
greater preparations and prouisions for so weightie  
an enterprize. And so much the more , for that hee is  
compelled to spend a good portion of that little,  
which he hath in mainteyning his forces that are di-  
uided, partly in Walachia to keepe them in awe for  
feare of their revolt to the Turkes , and partly in di-  
uerse places of Tranſyluania towards Moldauia, for  
feare of the Moldauians, of the Tartarians , and of  
other his enemies. Besides that it may be with great The Transyl-  
reason suspected and feared, least if this Prince shalluanian may  
want meanes and habilitie to maintaine himselfe peraduenture  
with forces in the field against the enemie , rather take some o  
then he will yeeld and submit himselfe againe to an may be dan-  
Infidel Prince, he wil resolute vpon some ſuch courſe to  
as he thinketh more godly and pleasing to God, and  
more ſafe and ſecure for himſelfe : which peraduen-  
ture may redound to the great damage and hind-  
rance of Christendome , for the loſſe that it ſhould  
receive in thofe partes of ſo valiant a Prince , as (I  
feare mee ) it hath ſome fauour and taste of it al-  
readie.

*And now for as much as I haue ſhewed, that it is not  
good for the Emperour and Tranſyluanian to make peace  
with the Turke , I will for the last poyn̄t diſcouer unto  
you*

Z 2

### The third part

What thinges you, the thinges which the enemie doeth greatest feare,  
the Turke esp. cally  
and what may be performed on our behalfe to annoy him  
most.

#### § XXI.

The Princes of Italia.  
The Duke of Florence.  
The Pope.  
  
The Duke of Mantua.  
The Venetians.

First the Turke feareth least the Princes of Italia will resolute in earnest to succour the Emperour and the Transyluanian either with men, or with money. He seeth, that the great Duke of Tuscane hath sent his brother, and his Neuwes to the one, and Capitaines and presents to the other. That the Pope sent the last yeare his Neuw with a good armie into Hungarie, by meanes wherof the Garrison of *Strigonia* and *Vicegrado* was the sooner yeelded: and moreouer that he furnisheth both the one and the other with money: yea, and likely it is, that as he is able, he will do so still, vntill the warre bee ended. He perceiueith also, that the going of the Duke of *Mantua* into Hungarie made his Souldiers belieue, that the other Italian Princes would likewise make some stirre. He doubteth, least the Venetians will be at the last of necessitie compelled to take vp armes against him, either for their owne proper interest and benefite, or by the continuall and instant motions of the Pope, as they did in the times of *Leo the ix.* of *Nicholas the 2.* of *Gelasius the 2.* of *Alexander the 2.* of *Galixtus the 2.* of *Clement the 3.* of *Nicholas the 4.* and of other Popes: so that not onely for the singular benefites which they haue done to Christendome, they haue deserued and obtained verie great preheminencies and priuiledges, at the hands

### of the Ottoman.

87

hands of the Emperour and the Popes, but also for their pietie and obedience to the Sea Apostolike, but also by common consent to bee called the defenders and fortresse of Christian Religion. And hereupon it commeth that the Turke dare not at this time minister vnto them any occasion of the least discontentment in the world, but doth readily satisfie them in any matter, which they request of him.

#### § XXII.

**M**oreouer hee doubteth that *Polonia* also will rise vp against him: knowing for certaintie, that the Pope offereth to furnish it with good store of money, whereof the meaner and poorer sort of the people in that kingdome are verie greedie, and desirous. For they think, that they cannot in any better sort purchase desert to themselues from their Prince, for which they may afterwards in conuenient time craue reward at his hands, the to serue him in his warres. This suspition and doubt of his, is the more increased in him, because hee knoweth that the king of Spaine did not answere the letters of the King of *Polonia*, but vntill now at the last, when hee was somewhat discontented with the peace which *Maximilian* had concluded with that kingdome. And further, the Turke knoweth full well, that if *Polonia*, should once in earnest resolute vpon this point, he should of necessitie be compelled to make a defensiu war, rather then an offensiu, to his exceeding great disadvantage, and that for 3. reasons.

Three reasons  
why if *Polonia* rise against  
the Turke, hee  
shall be forced  
to make a de-  
fensive warre.

Z 3

I. The

### The third part

1. The first, because thereby he must needs loose Moldavia, for that the Polack hath appointed for Vaiuode of that prouince, one Hieremie, who is a man that sheweth himselfe not altogither alienated misaffected towards our affaires of Christendom: and who also in respect that hee may in good time vnderstand any stirres that the Turke shal make, and minister good store of vittailes to the campe is one, that will be worthie of no small regard and consideration in this present warre. And therefore I may not forbear in such an impoortant poynt to tel you, that it shall always be good for our Lord and his Ministers to maintaine good intelligence with the said Hieremie, and that they be carefull to looke what sort of persons they send to treat with him, and how they write vnto him: for these people, who be the verie *Davi & Geta* in Terence, are by nature most suspiciois. It will be good also to honour him greetly and to seeme most willing to visite such as he shal send either to Rome, or to treat with the Nuntioes Apostolike. For the Turke endeuouring by diuerse and sundrie meanes to bind him to himselfe, or wholy to alienate him from vs, or else at the least to coulen and deceiue him: (all cunning fetches much vsed by the Ottomans) it cannot bee but verie helpefull and beneficiale to vs, to maintaine him, as much as may be, in good loue and amitie with vs.

2. The second reason is, because thereby, he shall haue the Cofacchi more openly to oppose themselves against him, as wel for that they be subiects of the K. of Polonia (as the Yscocchi be of the Emperour) and

Hieremie the  
Vaiuode of  
Moldavia.

### of the Ottoman.

88

and receive their Generall from him, whome the Souldiers doe ordinarily obey: as also for that they may at their pleasure burne and destroy *Vosia*, which is a Fortresse of the Turkcs, situate *Vosia* at the mouth of the Riuere Boristhenes, called by *Boristhenes* the Polackes *Occhiaconia*, and by the Moldauians *Dassona*: as in the yeare 1583, they burnt *Bendero*, *Bendero*. their Generall being then *Ianzo* the Hungarian, *Ianzo*. who was appointed ouer them by K. *Stephen of Polonia*. Many other harmes and annoyances they may also doo vnto him, as they did vnder *Suita* *Suita*. the Russian, and vnder *Conte Iamus* sonne of *Basilus* *Gontelanus*. the Duke of *Ostroma*, and other their Captains, which they likewise receyued from the Polonians. These *Cofacchi* doo dwell in an Island of *Boristhenes*, almost foure dayes iourneyes aboue *Vosia*. The Island is called *Chirches*, and the Riuere *Boristhenes* is by them termed *Nis*, which is the *Niepro*. They are Arcubuziers, and excellent Archers, and both by nature and open profession verie greate enemies to the Turkcs. Many of them doo serue at this day the Transyluanian, the foresaid *Hieremie* and *Michael*. Others doo attend and goe with the Chanceller of *Polonia*: and others are also dispersed and scattered in *Podolia*. But all of them with great courage doo shewe their faces to the Tartarians, and Turks.

3. The last reason is, because the Polacke onely, or at least more then any other Prince, is able to make the passage to *Constantinople* more easie for our people: for that is the placce, whether we must needs goe at the last, if we meane to doo any good in deed. And so much the more, for that if the Po-

The passage  
more easie to  
*Constantino-*  
*ple.*

Z 4

lacke

### The third part

lack, doo shew himselfe to bee an enemie to the Turke, then the Transyluanian shall not neede to feare the passage, which his Armie must make into Walachia<sup>1</sup>. For the way of Moldauia without touching Walachia, would bee verie incommodeous for it, alswell because it runneth too neare vnto the sea, as also because if hee would passe into Bulgaria, hee must returne backwardes to goe into the Countrey, that they may keepe and feede his horses, and to auoyde the vnlikely place of Varna.

And here by the way, I will not forbearre to aduertise you of an errour, which is of no small moment, as I haue also endeauored my selfe to doe, in sundry fite places of this narration, of diuers others which peraduenture will not proue altogether unprofitable, to such as are delighted with the like studies. And the error is this, that P.Iouius describing the said Province of Walachia and Moldauia, beeing deceived by the ambiguous and doubtfull wordes of Polackes, confoundeth the one of them with the other. And so are others also deceyued who doo thinke that to bee Walachia, which the Hungarians call Transalpina the lesser, whereas in comparison of Moldauia, it shoulde bee called Transalpina the Greater. Those are likewise in an error, who do bold, that walachia called by the Turkes Islakia, deriving the name from the ancient Romane Flacci, is also termed by them Bogdania & Cara Bogdania, for by that name they terme Moldauia (and not Walachria) eyther because it is very plentifull of that kinde of graine, which wee call Saracino, and Formentone, that is to say, Wheat, whereof Formentie is made, or because one of those Princes

Errorstouching  
Moldauia,  
and Walachia.

Islakia.  
Bogdania.  
Cara Bogdania.

### of the Ottoman.

89

ces of Moldauia, with whom the Turkes had some long warre, was called Bogdano, that is to say, Deodato. I. Gods gift, adding therewerto for his prænomen or forename Cara, which signifieth Blacke. And it is called also Moldauia of the Daui, who were the first inhabiteres therof, and rather for the softnesse and fatnesse of the moulde of that soyle, then for the blackenesse of it, as he thought; that called it Mori-Dauia.

But returning backe againe to Polonia, I will here set downe also the aunswere, which the Chanceller of that kingdome made to Sinan Bassa, at such time as he required and demaunded the tribute, which he wrongfully pretended to bee due to his Lord and maister: to the end that thereby may be knowne the benefite and profite, that in all reason is to bee expected of this cōbination, if the Polonian will yeeld vnto it. Sinan caused a message to be deliuiered to the Chanceller, that without delay hee should pay the said tribute: or else he would force him to leaue the Frontiers, and to retire to the Icie Sea. The Chanceller caused answere to bee redeliuered backe vnto him, that hee would not stay for him in his owne Countrey of Polonia, but that he would enter into the Ottomans Territories, and proceed with all speed even to the banks of the Danow, & fortifying them on both sides, would make the place more easie to passe vp further into those Countreyes of the Turke. This is Dacia Ripensis, which as you may read in Procopius, was fortifyed by the Romanes. Zozimus doth greatly blame Constantine the Emperour, because he forsooke and abandoned the Fortes of the Danow: the reliques whereof are yet to be seene in

The answere of  
the Chancelle  
s of Po'onia to  
the demaunde  
of Siman.

Dacia Ri-  
pen sis.

Constantine  
the Emperour.

Aa

Roscic,

### The third part

Roscic, Vidim, Nicopolis, Sslietria, and other places that are possessed by the Turkes.

### § XXXIII.

Why the  
Turke feareth  
Moscouia.

By what  
names the  
Turkes, and  
Persians call  
the Pope.

The Califa.  
The Czar of  
Moscouia.

Moreouer, the Ottoman not only esteemeth the Pope to be the head and chiefe of all the princes Christian, so that by his auctoritie hee may easily vnite now some, and then some of them against him but also accounteth him to be as a temporall prince, in regard of that which he possesseth in Italie: and thereupon he calleth him *Franch-Beg*, the Prince of Italie, or of the Italians, and *Rum-Beg*, the prince of Rome, whom the Persians call in their language *Rum-Schach*. *Halife* and *Califa* the Turkes call the Vicar of God, a title, which most impiously the ancient *Agarenes* began to appropriate to themselues. So that the Turke dooth greatly feare, least the Pope should send some person of credite into *Moscouia*, to solicite the vniion of that prince with the Emperour, which would bee a matter of great losse vnto him: or at least that he should perswade him to let or hinder the comming foorth of the Tartarians: as we haue shewed before, how hee may easily doe it.

He also feareth the armies and power of the *Czar* or *Zar* of *Moscouia*, for so the Moscouites doe call their prince: besides the reasons before alledged, as well for that he doth absolutely commaund and gouerne his subiects, and therefore it seemeth that among al the princes of the world, he is the only man that

### of the Ottoman.

90

that may compare with him: as also for that he doth verie well remember the discomfitures which the Moscouites haue giuen to the Turkes (for the Turkish princes doe vse to record in writing the actions of their ancestors) and in particular, when thy went about at the last to draw the *Tana* into the *Vlga*, they were by the Moscouites (who had vntited themselues with the Tartarians of *Precop*.) scattered and put to flight.

Hee feareth the *Czar* likewise, because hee <sup>The Turke</sup> doubteth least vpon this occasion there followe afeareth the <sup>v</sup>, treatie of the vniion of that prince, with the Church <sup>nion of the</sup> <sup>Moscouite</sup> of Rome, as it hapned in the times of *Adrian* the 6, with the <sup>6</sup> of *Leo* the 10, and of *Clement* the 7. Popes of Rome, <sup>church of</sup> <sup>Rome</sup> in maner and sort as it is written by *Albertus Campensis*, and as it is more at large recorded in the *Moscouia* of father *Antonio Possevino*, a greate minister of the seruice of God, sent of late for the same purpose by *Gregorie* the 13. to *John Basilius*, vpon occasion of the warre, which the said *John* had with *Stephen* king of *Polonia*. Or rather he feareth the *Mosconite*, because hee suspecteth, that if he should become the head and chiefe of all the Grecians, it wold so much the more encourage and hearten that Nation to make an insurrection and rebellion in the *Ottoman* state. These are matters that might peraduenture be brought to passe and sort to good issue, if among the *Moscouites* there were lesse ignorance in matters appertaininh to God, so that a man might freely conuerse with them, and preach the worde of Christ: and in briefe, if these vniions were not of purpose negociated and handled, rather <sup>A wish of the</sup> <sup>Authors, that</sup> <sup>these things</sup> <sup>may come to</sup> <sup>passe, & how.</sup>

A. 2 by

### The third part

by such cunning and craftie deuises the more easily to enlarge Dominion and Schisme , then for any thing else: even as the Turke vnder the amitie and friendship, which hath beene sought and offered vnto him by many Princes , hath entred and pierced into the bowels of Europe. But of this point we doe not nowe stande in feare : and therefore I wish that we would hope in the Lord, and pray that he would take away from their eyes that vaine of obstinacie, which hath hindered them from seeing the goodly light of the euangelicall truth, and that he would renue in the great duke now living, or in his successors those sprites, which were in that same *Basilius*, who by the meanes and mediation of *John* king of Denmark, requested of Pope *Iulie* the second , that hee might send his Ambassidours to the Councell, not for any ambition , or ostentation , or priuate interest, but onely to humble himselfe in truth , and sinceritie vnder the mightie hand of God, and to vsite the Pope.

This suspition is increased in the Turke, by the late humiliation, which was made to the Church of Rome by the *Maroniti*, (who (as *Haythone* writeth) doe inhabite about the Mount *Libanus* in *Soria*) procured and wrought by the Iesuites , and by *Vecchietti*, with the protection and patronage of pope *Gregorie* the 13. and of *Ferdinando* the great Duke of *Tuscane*. But much more is he dismayed at the obedience which those Bishops of *Russia* haue of late yeelded , who in the names of themselues, and of the Russians which are subiects vnto them , by the zeale of *Sigismonde* king of *Polonia* , haue humbled themselves

*Basilius.*

The submis-  
sion of the Ma-  
roniti to the  
Church of  
Rom.

The submis-  
sion like-  
wise of the Russian  
Bishops.

### of the Ottoman.

91

themselues to Pope *Clement* the viii. whereof Cardinall *Baromus* hath more particularly written in his learned *Annales Ecclesiasticall*. And this matter is so much the more considerable, for that especially by the meanes and helpe of the Russians, the conuersion and vniting of the Moscouites, may exceeding easily bee procured: and also for that with lesse expenses and danger, passage may be made by *Mosconia* into *Asia*, for the sowing and planting of the Faith of Iesus Christ, then by all the other parts of the world besides.

Lastly, the Turke feareth the Moscouite, because he suspecteth, that hee will dispose himselfe to moue warre against him, as often as hee seeth the Emperour and Empire to doo the like in earnest. And in this point consisteth the whole matter, as it was signified to the Emperours Maiestie by the Embassadors of *Mosconia*, that were last sent vnto him from the Prince of *Mosconia* with verie rich presentes, at the instigation and exhortation of *Alejandro Cumuli* the Popes Agent.

### § XXIII.

THE Ottoman likewise feareth, that his Holines will send Agentes, especially men of great authority and good judgement to the Tartarians, as well those that are free, as those that are subiect to the Tartar of *Crimo*, to the end that by offering & giuing Money to certaine chiefe persons, which are of greatest reputation among them (as it is vsed also among the Swizzers) they should prouide, that

Why the  
Turke feareth  
Tartaria.

Aa 2

they

### The third part

they stirre not out of their own Countrey : with an open publication of the Popes name, as at other times it hath beeene done. For all the Tartarians are of an opinion, that the Pope hath exceeding store of treasure, and is a man of great power and authority, and therefore they will bee very readilie resolued to pleasure him in any thing. And it is holden for certain among the Turkes, that the Emperour and the Transyluanian did so this last yeare, because the Tartarians came vnto them in so small a number, and not in that multitude, as they had prouided, and as some of vs (Christians) did vainely and falsly belieue. And so much the more is our vaine opinion confuted, because it is notoriously known, that *Alipe Chan*, treating with Visconte the Nuntio for some aide, that hee might bee preserued in his State against his Brother *Hirach*, was not able to procure many of his owne people to be sent foorth out of his owne Countrey. I know it wel that some haue attributed the cause of this defect of the Tartarians to the discontentmentes, which they haue conceyued against *Amurath*, for the peace which hee made with the Persians: For (say they) they had thought to haue gotten vpon the Persian, before this peace had beeene concluded, so safe a passage to goe to *Mecca*, as without passing thorough the Turkes Countrey, they might frelie haue gone therethen. But I know that these men are greatlie deceyued. For they were not the Tartarians of *Crimo*, that were so greatlie discontented with the Turke: but those that were ynder the obedience of *Vsbeg Chan* (of whome I haue some-  
what

Why the Tar  
tarians haue  
come in so  
small a number  
to aide the  
Turke.

Why the Tar  
tarians were  
discontented with  
*Amurath*.

### of the Ottoman.

92

what spoken before: ) and those also not for that cause which they alledge. For (if I be not in an errouer) although they would haue gained and gotten into their handes all the whole Persian Estate and kingdome, yet they must algates of necessitie passe through the Countrey of the Turkes, when so euer they would go to *Mecca*. But the reason thereof was because *Amurath* had concluded a peace with the Persians, without making them acquainted therewithall, and to the exceeding great detriment of their designements and affaires.

And in sooth euen as true is it, that the Tartarians did forbear to come to the Turks in so great a multitude as they expected, because they were kept backe by the Moscouite, although the Tartarians themselues did vse it for an excuse: but the verie truth is, that the Tartarian two brethren being become great enemies, the one to the other. *Alipe Chan* to maintaine himselfe in the state, and *Hirach* to drue him out of it, they held all the Countrey in a faction, and busied wholy in the defence of their owne priuate quarels, as yet they doe. For *Alipe* though he be the King now reigning, is not obeyed by all the Tartarians: and *Hirach* is acknowledged to be king, onely by such as haue serued him as generall in this warre. Who although it is verie likely that in the end hee will get the victorie, because the Turkish Emperour *Mahomet* hath commaunded them all to obey him, and acknowledge him for their king, and the greatest part of the Souldiers doe follow him: yet is the contrarie opinion holden by such as haue the best intelligence of the Tartarian affaires

The difference  
and quarrell  
betweene Alip  
Chan, and his  
brother Hirach

### The third part

affaires, not only because euuen among the Barbarians . *Ius Natura*, i. the right of Nature caryeth a great stoke, but also because *Hirach* is lesse beloued, more avaricious , and estcemed among them to be a man of small braine and valour.

#### § XXV.

The Turke  
feareth to be  
troubled by  
the Pope, and  
the king of  
Spaine.

Conditions re-  
quisite to be in  
such as should  
be seate to trou-  
ble the Tur-  
kish state.

What pretense  
or colour they  
may vse.

**L**AStly, the Turke feareth that the Pope and the King of Spaine are minded to trouble his state and Countrey, both by sea and by land, and by that meane to diuert him from his purposed designmēts. But forasmuch as this may bee done by diuerse and sundrie wayes, it will not be amisse in plaine and distinct maner to tell you, what I thinke . The Christian princes, and especially the pope, may send diuerse Agents into the Turkish Empire, who (that they might haue the more credite) would be of the selfe same Countreys, wherein such a trouble and insurrection should be attempted. It were verie fit also that they had the tongue , to the ende they might both understand, and be vnderstood: and lastly that they be men of good cariage and iudgement : but aboue all other thinges, that they haue conuenient suplie of money , to spend vpon such chiefe men and Captaines as are of greatest credite with the people, and that they haue authoritie withal to promise to such as are the mightiest among them, that they shall be well rewarded and recompensed. Finally, it shall bee verie needfull, that for their more easie admittance and intertainment in the Country, and not on a sodaine to be driven away, they should couer

### of the Ottoman.

93

couer all their treaties with the couer of Religion, not to couch the Snake vnder the grasse , as our naughtie Polititians do, but (if so it may please the Lord) among the thornes of their errours to lowe the seede of Gods worde, making shew for the time that they wil reforme and repaire the Churches that are in Tartaria, Circassia, Bulgaria, Walacchia, Moldauia, and Greicia.

Moreouer the territorie of the Turkes, and especially that part which the Turkish Empire doth posse in Europe, inhabited partly by Turks *Natura*, partly by Rinegados, and partly by Christians , the Ottoman Prince may with great reason feare , that if either his Armies shall receiue an ouerthrow , or some of his principals be corrupted, his peoples wil make an insurrection and tumult to his exceeding great losse, yea, and peraduenture to his vtter ruine, even as Cæsar wrought and effected against Iuba.

*But because the knowledge of these peoples is verie ne-  
cessarie , for the better understanding of this point tou-  
ching these insurrections and rebellions, I will enlarge the  
matter somewhat farther.*

#### § XXVI.

**T**HE Turkes naturall, that is to say, those that be Turkes of the auncient offspring, although they be by nature not of so euill a disposition and inclination, as the other Rinegate Turkes are, yet bee they as greatly discontented and displeased as the Rine-gates are : so that it will be no great matter for them one day to make a rebellion, especially if they shall

The natural  
Turkes.

B b

find

### The third part

Why then natu  
telli Turkes  
are discontented.  
  
What the  
word Turke  
signifieth.  
  
The Rinc-  
gados.

find a Head, or a Captaine fit for the purpose. The occasion of their discontentments springeth from hence, that they see all the militarie charges and offices, whereon only the profit, commoditie, & honour of that Empire doth chiefly depende, (as it is before partly touched) are giuen and bestowed vp on the rinegate Turkes, those few onely excepted, which are graunted to some of the naturall Turkes by exceeding great fauour, or to the children of the *Sultane-Ladies*. And herevpon it commeth, that among the *Musulmani*, there is no terme or title more honourable, or more in request, then to be called *Schiavo del Gran Signore*, the vassall or slauve of the great Lord: nor any more infamous and more abhorred, then the worde Turke: for Turke in their tongue signifieth a villaine: as among the Greeks *Nomade* doth not signifie onely a man of Numidia, but a Sheepheard, and therfore *Strabo* calleth the Scythians, *Nomadi*. And hereof likewise it is, as it hath beene also obserued by a late moderne writer, that euен as the Italians doe in their Comedies bring on the stage a *Zani*, which is a Bergamaske slauve or villaine, so the Turks in their playes do bring vp a Turke, that is to say, a rusticall or rude Clowne. Others there are, which derive the worde Turke from the Hebrew, and wil haue it to signifie an Exul or a banished man, for the selfe same reasons, for which we told you before, that the Tartarians call themselves *Reliquias; reliques*.

The rinegate Turkes, out of all question it is certaine, that when by the grace of God they shall feele and vnderstand the benefite which they haue lost,

they

### of the Ottoman.

94

they will easily ouerturne that state vp-side downe, with the totall and vtter overthrow of that Empire: considering that they haue in their hands (as it hath beene tolde you) all the reputation and riches, which are the things whereon both Credite and Obedience do necessarily depend. But for as much as they are men of a most vicious and wicked nature, and are tollerated in all kind of beastly infolences, so that they dare doe any thing that them listeth, they are willing and content to liue in that infamous liberty, without attempting any innovation.

The Christians, who by the Turkes are called The Christi-  
*Ghiauri*, that is to say, Gentiles and Infidels, euen in the Turkes  
regarde of the diuerle and sundry Rites that are a-  
mong them, especially in the Turkish Country,  
(not knowing poore vnhappy soules, that there is  
but one onely true Church, one Baptisme and one  
true Faith) they are eyther of the Greeke Sect, or  
of the Latine Rite. I doe not entend at this time  
to discourse particularly of althose that haue strayed  
from the purity of the Greeke sect, as the Geor-  
giants, the Armenians, the *AEthiopians*, the *Iaco-*  
*bites* and many others, that dwell (as I told you) in *Armenians*,  
the Ottoman Empire, awell in Europe, as in *Aisa*, *AEthiopians*,  
and *Africa*, both because it hath beene diligently &  
curiously done by others, and also because it is a  
very intricate and difficult matter, by reason of their  
differences in opinions, and distances of Countrey-  
es, and for many other respectes, to bring them to  
conspire together in one, (without the great mira-  
cle of G O D,) for the subuersion and ruine of that  
Empire.

B b 2

### The third part

Empire. I ouerpasse also the Heretikes that are among them, for that although they doe remaine in the Ottoman State, eyther as Reliques of their ancient Forefathers, or else of late retyred into diuerse partes of that Countrey, to liue the more licentiously, or like the Sonnes of Sathan, to disperse their poyson euен among the Turkes: yet being so greatly abhorred of them, as disturbers of the publicke peace and tranquilitie. (as *Sultan Soliman* wrote to the *Queene Dowager of Transyluania*.) They cannot bee permitted to make any great trayne, or worke any innouation among the people. I wil onely speake of those Greekes, which serue best for this our purpose, not regarding them for this time touching their Religion, but considering them for so much as in policie may bee expected and hoped for at their handes, in this particular point of rebellion and insurrection. The Greekes without al doubt, are by a certaine pricke and eare desire to dominere and rule, which they haue had by nature most desirous of Nouelties: and because the Tuiks doe so greatly tyrannize ouer them, they doe willingly and readily embrace any alteration or tumult, hoping by that onely meane to shake off the heauie yoke of their most miserable slauerie. And this is chiefly and especially desired by the Greekes of *Mores* and of *Thessalie*, and by those rather which dwell towardes the sea, because foraine aides and helpe may more easily bee supplied to them, then to thosse that dwell within the land. But farre aboue all others, it is most desired by the *Serniani*, being a Nation that inhabiteth in

### of the Ottoman.

95

in the mountaines of *Albania*, euен to the *Danow*: among whom those that are in *Dardania*, and most neare vnto the saide Mountaines, are best able to make the greatest stirres. And they be the *Piperi*, the *Cucci*, the *Clementi*, the *Bellopaulizi*, and others in the Countrey of *Plana*, and among them there are many Albanians that liue after the Romish rite. And these be they, that because they haue a strong site for dwelling, and are by nature verie fierce and hardie, haue not as yet suffered themselues to bee subdued by the Turkish forces. And therefore they did (at the last) attempt to withdraw themselues out of the Ottoman tyrannie. For hauing vnderstood that *Mahomet* was discomfited and slaine in the battaile at *Agria*, they all arose in a tumult vnder the command of *Gardan Vaiuode*, and made a great slaughter of the Turkes that were in their Countrey: but when they were minded to passe further, they vnderstood the contrarie, and so in a discontented manner retired themselues into their mountaines.

And for as much as these poore miserable Greeks haue endured so feuere chastisement at the handes of the Turkish officers, that they remaine not onely most pitifullly afraied, but also most grieuously oppressed, their chiefe heades and gouernours being cruelly put to death, their children taken from their parents, some killed and slaughtered, and almost all of them bereaued and spoyled of that little which they had, and brought to extreme miserie: a man may verie plainly and clearly see and know that to be most true, which is written by *John Botero* in his *Antonio Bruni* in his *Africa*, and more at large by *Antonio Bruni* in his *Brunk* treatise

*John Botero*  
*Antonio*  
*Brunk*

### The third part

Caution to treatise of the Beglerbey-ship of *Grecia*, that is to say,  
be obserued in rebellion.

That it is not good to attempt such enterprisēs and insurrections, but with a strong resolution, and forces sufficient to bring the intended purpose to passe. For otherwise they waken and arme the enemy, and serue to none other end, but to worke losse to the Authours of them, and to themselves that are in the action; and so much the rather because such rebellions (for the most part) are not throughly considered of, nor well aduisēd, nor raised in fit time & oportunitie. And that this is true, it may bee perceiued & known by that which the Turke did, whē he understood that the Armadaes of the Portugals had oftentimes entered into the redde sea, and were there entertained by the Officers of *Prestre-Ian*, and that they also gaue ayde to the Portugals agaynst him. Forthereupon he tooke away from *Prestre-Ian* almost all the Prouince of *Bernagasso*, and made the Arabians to fortifie their hauens, which always before were wont to be open and common.

Moreover, the Chimeriotes, of whom I haue spoken somewhat alreadie, hauing lately made a rebellion, by some perswasions giuen vnto them (and specially by the meanes and helpe of *Athanafius Bishop of Ocrida*, who made them beleue that hee had intelligence with the Emperour, and that he expected aydes from the king of Spaine) were enforced to reconcile themselves to the Turkes, as diuerse other times they had done before, with such condicions as were of great disadvantage vnto them: which likewise (to leaue now al older examples) happened in our dayes to the *Ducati* their neighbours, who after

Why the Turk  
tooke Berna-  
gasso from  
*Prestre-Ian*.

Rebellion of  
the Chimeri-  
otes.

*Athanafius B.*  
of Ocrida.

### of the Ottoman.

96

after they were well chastised by *Pirri Bassa*, then *Pirri Bassa*, being the Sangiack of *Deluino*, and brought not to many mo then two hundred households, were transported to *Neribo*.

Lastly, the taking of *Clissa* (to leaue those of *Corraine*, of Castle *Nuono* in the time of *Charles the fift*, and others) which fell out now last of all, hath not wrought that benefite and profit, which was highely desired by the popes holy minde: and principally because the *Murlacchi*, by whom the imperialists did verily beleue they shoulde haue beeene ayded against the Turke, perciuing so small a number of them to come, quite contrarie to their hope and expection, because they would not make their estate worse with a greater affliction & punishment, came downe from the mountaines and fought on the Turkes side, who did helpe them to defeate *Lencovich*, telling him plainly that they would be true and faithfull to the grand-Turke.

But returning to thos peoples, that dwell in the Turkish Country, it remaineth now to speake of the *Latines*. Some of them dwell there as forreiners and straungers, and some make their continuall abode there. The forreiners attend and employ themselves vpon trades and trafficke, either by themselves, or by others for them: and little harme can they doe, hauing neither a Head or Captaine to guide them, nor weapons sufficient to fight withal, especially being in number so few, and dispersed scatteringly here and there ouer all that state. Some there be that making these Latines to bee all one with other Christians, that are of a severall sect, do hold opinion, that they

The taking of  
*Clissa*.

Why the Mur-  
lacchi went a-  
gainst Lenco-  
vich.

The Latines

The forre-  
Latines.

### The third part

they which dwell in *Constantinople*, by conspiring together, vpon any occasion of some notable tumult and vprore raised by the Turks theselues, may make some stirre not vnworthie of good consideration. For they do think, that the Latines being (indeed) of greater number in *Constantinople*, then in the other most populous Cities of that Empire, such as are *Cairo*, *Aleppo*, and *Tauris*, adding *Pera* therevnto, where all the Latines almost do remaine, those few *Caffaluchi* excepted, which keep in *Constantinople* after they were transported thither from *Caffa* by *Mahamet*, they may the more easily confederate themselues together, and be prouided and furnished with armour, whereof the Turkes are wont most strictly to spoyle the Christians in other places, therby the more to strengthen and secure their own estates. And hereupon *Amurath* the last, hauing accused the Christians that they had set on fire certain streetes in *Constantinople* (euen like for all the worlde as *Nero* did, when hee accused the Christians that were in *Rome* in his time of the like crime) & therfore had giuen order, that the Iannizaries should hew them in peeces, he revoked that commaundement, when he was aduertised by the *Aga*, that in regarde of their multitude it could not bee put in execution without great daunger: besides that it would breed an exceeding notable losse of his customs, and greatly disturbe the trafficke which would bee a thing against reason, and the law of all nations: and therefore he caused diuerse Iewish women to be put to death, that had counsaile and aduised him therunto.

Others

### of the Ottoman.

97

Others are of opinion, that some persons might bee vsed without any suspition of the Turkes, who vnder the colour and by occasion of traffique, in the Ottomans Dominions, and speciallie in *Constantinople*, might eyther by large bribes, or by soothing and fostering the ambition or discontentmentes of the chiefeſt great men, ouerthrow that Empire with a ciuill warre, and the rather for that their Prince is a man of ſmall witte or forecast: as peraduenture it had fallen out, if wee Christians had furthered the discontentmentes and iealousies of *Ferat*, of *Hibrain*, of *Pirri*, and of *Mustafa*, and of *Mahamet Baffa*, and laſtly of *Sinan* and of *Ferat*, and those iarres that are not yet appeaſed betweene *Cicala* and *Hibrain*. And this matter might the more ſafely bee brought to paſſe, if any occaſion ſhould fall out, that diuerſe Brethren ſhould meeſe in preteneſe and challenge of the Empire, as it hap- pened among the Children of *Mahamet*, of *Baiazet*, and of *Soliman*: or if the Empire ſhould chance to want a Naturall Succellor.

And forasmuch as the will of Man, may bee wonne and bowed two manner of wayes, that is to ſay, eyther by force or by reaſon: Some thinke that the Turkish State may bee ouerturned not on- ly by ſuch meaneſ as are aboue mentioned, but al- ſo by diſcouering vnto the Turkes, and particu- larly vnto the Ianizzaries, on the one ſide their birth and offſpring, and the Baptisme which they haue had, and on the other ſide the fables and mad fooleries of the Alcoran, which are verie learnedly declared by Cardinal *Cusanus*, and other writers

But

The meaneſ  
to raife ciuill  
warres among  
the Turkes:

Iars betweene  
the Great men  
of Turkie,

That the Tur-  
kish estate may  
be ouerturned  
rather by leav-  
ing then by  
Force.

### The third part

John Andrea  
Alfaqui of  
Sciatiua.

Bookes to bee  
dispersed in  
Turkie, to ad-  
vertise the  
Turks of their  
errors.

The Sophilarii.

But the more auailable course would bee, to make some easie and witty bookeſ of this matter in the Sclauoyne tongue, and in the Arabike, as in particular hath beene alreadie done by John Andrea, ſometimes a Moore, and Alfaqui, of the Cittie of Sciatiua: and the bookeſ of the one language to bee diſpersed and ſcattered in Europe, and the other in Asia, cauſing them to paſſe from the Indies, to Mazzambique in Africa, and from thence to Zofala & Dyloa which are in Asia: Or to the Moluccoſ, to Gouien, Goa, Diu, Ormuſ, and other places where the Turkish merchants doe haunt and frequent: or els to Oran, to Arzide, and to other places ſubiect to the King of Spaine: or laſtly thorough the Countryes of the Gentiles and Heathen, that are in amity and confederacie with the Christians, as Calicut, Zeilam, Cambaia and others, and ouer all the partes of Europe, that confine and border vpon the Turkes. which course in mine opinion, although it will not peraduenture worke that which ſuch like bookeſ doe vifually worke among vs Christians, being ſownen and ſcattered abroade for the moſt part by men, that are defirous of Nouelties, eſpecially for that the Turkes are as farre from employing themſelues in reading and ſtudie, as wee are too much addiicted thereunto, and curioſ therein: yet notwithstanding, it may peraduenture one day worke ſome great good, iſ ſome Great man among them ſhould become the Head of a new ſect: for thereby it may eaſily come to paſſe, that hee ſhould bee followed by the multitude, as it hath happened in Germanie, in England, and in France, and oftentimes among

of the Ottoman:

98

among the Turkes themſelues in Africa, where learning flouriſhed for a long time, and in Persia among the Sophilarii, who are the followers of the Sect of Hali, one of the fewer companions of the ſeducer Mahamet, which ſect was afterward rather renewed then inueneted by Erdeuil, whome Paulus Iouſus calleth Arduel the Father of Iſmael the Sophi.

And here I cannot but vpon this occation recount vnto you a matter moſt worthiē to be recorded in Historie, that happened in the life time of ſtorie of the last Emperour Amurath at Constantinople. And thus it was. That one of thoſe youthes which are brought vp in the Royal Serraglio, having leaſure & conuenience to reade the Holy Bible, and therevpon by the mediation and working of the grace of God, being brought to the knowledge of his error wherein hee liued, caused himſelue to be carried into the Preſence of the Great Turke, and therewith a Christian courage and boldneſſe told him, That if hee would preſerue his ſoule from the eternall fire and damnation, hee muſt ſurceafe from following that impious ſuperſtitioſ of Mahamet, and humble himſelue vnder the obedience of the true law of Ieſus Christ the Sauiour and Redeemer of the whole world. But hee was for the ſame, as though hee had committed a moſt heynous and grieuous offence, condemned publikely to bee ſpitted aliue vpon a ſtake, where hee iterated and repeated the ſame words to all the people, with ſuch effectuall termes replenished and enflamed with the fiery ſpirite of the holy Ghost, that many of the beholders feeling themſelues inwardly inkindled therewith, did burst forth

### The third part

foorth in commiseration of his death, into verie disdainefull and despitefull speeches against *Amurath*: and if the tumulte had not beeene appeased at the first, by the Praetorian Bandes, certainelie there had followed therupon a most daungerous and perilous sedition.

So that in truth, the Great Duke of Tuscane, deserueth exceeding prayse and commendation, for causing many good and godly workes to bee imprinted in the Arabike Character or Letter, of purpose to disperse them afterwardes, as hee doth in *Africa*, and elsewhere. A course out of all question, that although it was heretofore disturbed and hindered by the Siriffe of *Africa*, vpon the insinuation of *Antonio di Flores*, a Neapolitan, yet one day perhappes may bee so happily promoted and furthered, as it will bring foorth that fruit which was affected & desired by Pope *Gregorie the XIII*. a man in that respect worthie of euerlasting memorie, and is also at this time greatly endeauored by the Pope that now liueth.

But forasmuch as the greatest part of those Christians, which doe continuallie dwell and remayne within the Turkish dominions, are Albanois, I will somewhat insist upon telling you somewhat of them.

### X X V I I.

Some of these Albanois or Albanians do live according to the Latine rite, others after the Greekish rite: but all of them dwell not onely in that part which is called *Albania*, beginning on the west

at

### of the Ottoman.

99

at *Dulcigno*, and the lake of *Scutari*, and ending on <sup>Their habitati-</sup> the East at *Bafia*, which I tolde you was right ouer against the Island of *Corfu*: but also in other places of *Morea*, and of *Grecia*, where they haue withdrawne themselues eyther by occasion of the wars, or beeene transported thither by the Emperours of the East, thereby to remedy their often rebellions.

Touching these Albanois Latines, the same *Bruni* <sup>Their Condi-</sup> their Countryman in his Treatise before alledged <sup>tions.</sup>

doth write, that as they are the best armed people so are they the most true and faithfull Christians in all the Ottoman Empire, holden also to be the most valiant and greatliest feared for their continuall insurrections, raysing trouble and tumult vpon any the least occasion that they can catch: and this is the qualitie both of those that dwell in the playne Countrey, and also of those that keepe in the mountaines.

Howbeit they are constrainyd in despite of their teeth to submit and humble themselues, because they are not able alone and of themselues to resist the Turkes, and much lesse their neighbour Christians, by whome they are verie many times more vexed and troubled for their rapine and spoyling of Christians, then for fayning themselues to be faithfull towardes the Turke. Besides that oftentimes the Sangiackes doe minister good cause vnto them to rebell, eyther because they vse to praye vpon them, or for that they would be reuenged on them, or else that they might haue a likely excuse for not going abroad to any warre a farre off. And for the same purpose the Sangiack of the *Ducagini* doth neuer depart from thence, like as also he of *Castell*.

<sup>The Sangiack  
of the Ducagini</sup>

C 3

Angelo

### The third part

The Sangiack *Angelo* doth, who vnder the colour and pretense of Castel-An-  
gel, of detaining that Countrey from the Christian  
Armadaes, stayeth alwayes at home.

The Ducagini. These *Ducagini* do dwell in the mountain *Scardo*, at the confines of *Preseremo*, called in times past *Parrecopoli*, or *Perenopoli* which is in *Dardania* vpon the borders of *Albania*, inhabited more by the *Albanois*, then by the *Seruians*: neyther is it that which is called *Iustendil*, as some doe think: for the one Cittie is distant from the other by the space of three dayes iourneyes, and yet they bee in one and the selfe same Prouince. They are are also greatlie deceyued in my iudgement, which are of opinion, that *Iustendil* is *Iustiniana* the first, and not the second, and that *Preseremo* or *Iustendil*, was the naturall Countrey of *Iustinian* the Emperour, and not *O crida*, which is in truth *Iustiniana* the first, and was called in the old time *Lycbindo*. Those that do dwell somewhat farre off out of the common highway, doe pay no tribute, because they are defended by the rough and craggie passage of their mountaine scituacion. The mountaine is called *Nero*, *Blake*, and so are many mountaines in Turkie, called likewise by the same name.

Albania de-  
scribed. This *Albania* at the Adriatike Sea is compassed about by verie high mountaines. A plaine countrey it is, and watered with many very great riuers, so that they debarre passage for footmen to trauell to those Christians that inhabite the other partes of the Countrey. They haue no Horse, neyther haue they any meanes to make Bridges. Those places that are inward and inclosed within the waters are in  
the

### of the Ottoman.

100

the possession of the Turkes: and although they be not all garded with Garrisons, nor strongly kepte, yet the principall of them are verie safe, so that they cannot couertly bee robbed or spoyled by the Christians: which point (sayeth the said *Bruni*) I thought good to note vnto you, in regarde of the opinion, which is conceiued of these peoples, that they are able of themselues to performe soome good, without the helpe and succours of any forraigne Nation: and that the fame and rumor onely of the aides that should come from *Italie* and *Spain*, with a shew likewise but of one Regiment vnder an Ensigne, (even as the Embassadour of *Lewes Duke of Myllane*, *Lewes D. of told Charles the V III. King of France*,) is sufficient Milan. and enough to stirre them vppe to an insurrection. Charles the But God graunt that the vnhappy wretches be not France. brought into daunger hereby, and that by these open and publike treaties, there bee no losse indeed of the oportunitie of some good, that may be expected in times to come.

And thus much bee spoken of the Turkes naturall, and of the Rinegadoes, and of the Grecians and Latines, that dwell in the Turkes dominions.

### § XXVIII.

AND lastly the Turke considereth, that if the searach the Gallyes of the king of Spaine, that is to say, the ning of the Guardes of Naples, Sicilie and Genoa, should ioyne wth the Popes Gallyes, themselues with the Gallyes of the Pope, of Malta, of Florence, and of Sauoy, they would make so good a bodie of an Armada, that being assisted by fauourable

C c 4

The Turke

Gallyes

Popes Gallyes

Malta

with Gallyes

Florence

Sauoy

### The third part

rable winds, they may very easily on a suddaine assault, either Castle-Nuouo, or the Velona, and other places of Albania: or else if they forbear so to doe in regard of the Common-wealthe of Venice, who chalengeþ iurisdiction in the Adriatical sea, for such reasons as are at large displayed by Girolamo Bardi, they may assaile Morea, and perhaps also the Dardanelli, or some other notable place of his Empire to his exceeding losse.

How the places possessed by the Turkes on the seacoast may be assaulted.

Which paynt being verie considerable and of good consequence, it will not be amisse, for the better information of such, as shall courteously reade all these discourses, and doe not so well know the particulars of those places which belong to the Turke, and may by vs Christians be easily assaulced, that I tell you somewhat in particularitie, and specially touching their situation, and the manner of winning them, whether it be likely to proue well or no.

Castel-Nouo. Castle-Nuouo is within the Chanell of Catharo called in olde times the auncient *Acriuius*. The entrance therewith is verie hard and difficult, by reason of the straites in the mouth of it, where Iacomo Soranzo the general Proueditorie for the Venetian Armada, had made the fort of *Verbagno* even with the ground, which was there built by the Turkes. To get that place, the spade may worke much, but it may easily be succoured by land. It was somtimes possessed by the Spaniards, who although they did not maintaine and keepe it against *Barbarossa*, for the reasons that are most manifest, and knowne, yet are they greatly commended by the Turkes in their Chronicles.

Velona, called in times past *Aulon*, is situate at the mouth

The Fort of Varbagno defaced by Iacomo Soranzo

### of the Ottoman.

101

mouth of the gulf of the Sea Adriatike, ouer against the promontorie of *Santa Maria*, in old time called *Lapygia*, in *Pulia*, not aboue threescore miles from *Otranto*. This place hath no conuenient Port or Hauen for the Gallies, but some three miles off the entrance thereof, being well defended, and barred with marshes, with Pooles and Salt pits. It is not verie strong, and yet if you should be minded to conquer it, you must batter two Castels, the one, which is in the plaines and almost conioyned with the Burgo, and built in times past by the advise of *Pignatello* an Out-law of Naples: and the other, which standeth aloft, lesse then a mile distant from the Citie, and is called *Canina*, now inhabited by the Turkes, who had driuen the Christians from thence, vpon a suspition, that they had taken of them in this present treatise of revolt.

Touching the rest of *Albania* or *Arbania*, the places which may bee gotten, are within land, and those that are on the sea-coasts haue no Hauens. Besides that the Inhabitants are for the most part verie base and cowardly people. And although the time was indeed, wherein the Albanois did shew themselves verie valiant against the Turkes, and specially in the dayes of *George Castriotta*, yet now they cannot shew themselves to be the same men, because they haue their enemie not onely their absolute Lord and Maister at home in their houses, but they haue him also on their backes, as in tymes past they had not: to which calamite they haue been subiect, euer since the Turke hath gained their Countrey, and the Countrie adioyning vnto them.

D d More-

Velona: The Promontorie of Santa Maria.

Pignatello an Out-law of Naples.

George Ca- striotta.

### The thrid part

Moreover, the Albanois are greatly diminished, and want such a couragious Captaine as *Castriotte* was, who had good intelligence of the Turkish affaires, well experienced in the Countrey and highly beloved and admired of the Countrey inhabitants, and also of his souldiers.

Dulcigno. *Dulcigno*, called heretofore *Olcino*, or *Colchinio*, may be assailed by an Armada. For although it want a Hauen, yet in good weather the Fleete may disbarke vpon the shore. It is by situation verie strong, but a great part of it is fallen by an earthquake: and therefore if it should be wonne, it wil be most needfull for the maintaining and keeping of it, to fortifie it anew. If *Dulcigno* be wonne, *Scutari*, in times past called *Scodra*, may peraduenture be woone also. For although it bee fortified in a situation that is by Nature most strong, yet is it so ill guarded by the Turkes as it may easily bee entred in the night time vpon a sodaine.

Durazzo. *Durazzo*, of old called *Dyrracchium* lieth in the plaine Countrey. It is not istrong, but in trueth it would be the aptest and fittest of all other places to make entrance into the enemies Countrey, bee cause it is situate in the middle, and neare vnto Italy, although it bee very subiect to the expectation and feate of the enemies assaults.

Morea. The Turke may also be greatly damnified, by entering in *Peloponnesus*, which is at this day called *Morea*, either for the many Mulberie trees which are there, or because it hath the shafe or forme of a Mulberie leafe. This prouince lying in the midst of the states, which the Turke hath in Europe, if it were

### of the Ottoman.

102

were entred, wee should make warre with him at *The true way how to warre with the Turk* homewithin his owne Countrey: which is indeed the true Art of warfare: for so did *Cyrus*, *Cesar*, and *Hanniball*, and so haue the most famous auncient Captaines aduised to do, whatsoeuer other moderne men of later times do say to the contrarie. Moreover, by this meanes he should easily be diuerted and turned away indeed, and his Armada hindred from going any further.

Lastly, if *Salonicchi*, sometimes called *The ssalonica Salonicchi*, might be gotten, it is most certaine that it would be verie available for the forwarming of our affaires. For our people and Souldiers being disbarked at that place, they may afterwardes very conueniently and commodiously passe vnto such places as lie vpon the high way which leadeth to Constantinople, and cut out a way into Greece, as did the Romanes, and *Alaricus* king of the Gotthes, who with thirtie thousand men onely, subdued and conquered the of the Gotthes Romanes themselues. And so much the easier will it be, if at the verie selfe same time the Polack and the Transyluanian be pricked forwarde to passe ouer the *Danow*, and so going on through *Bulgaria*, to annoy the enemie in earnest, euen to the Citie of *Constantinople*.

### § XXIX.

**B**vt most true it is, that it will be verie necessarie *Advertisement* for the safe and sure effecting of these other like *how to bring their matters resolutions*, if our Princes shall happen to bee resolved to passe the greatest secrecie that may be. One thing (sayeth *Hayho* the Armenian, writing vpō the iourny to the *secret*)

D d 2 holy

### The third part

Haytho the  
Armenian

Judith.cap.8

Holy Land,) among others. I dare bee bolde to put you in mind of that in any case, as soone as the Christians shall bee resolued to doe any good, they doo warily and curiously keepe secret their intents and counsels, to the end that the enemie be in no wise informed or acquainted with their purposes. For the Christians in times by-past, because they would not conceale their desigmentes, found by experiance, that they fell into many disaduantages, whereas on the contrarie side, the enemie hath auoide many daungers, and so bereaued the Christians of their opportunities, to bring their wished desires to effect. To leauue the examples of the Gentiles, when *Judith* was resolued with a couragious minde to goe and kill *Holofernes*, for the deliuerie of the Cittie of *Bethulia*, it is written in the Holy Scripture, that shee would not make any partaker of her purpose, but sayde to two onelie, and afterwardes to the Priestes: *Vos nolo ut scrutemini actum meum, & usque dum renuntiem vobis, nihil aliud fiat, nisi oratio pro me ad Dominum Deum nostrum*: I will not haue you to enquire of my Act, and vntill I declare it vnto you, Let no other thing be done, but prayer for mee to the Lorde our God. This course if it were practised in our times with true devotion and Faith, certaintely it would not fall out, that our Princes should haue any neede at all to feare a happy and prosperous issue of their counsels and deuises, and thereby they might also more curiously search and find out the desigmentes of their enemies. For euene as God doth neuer abandon or forsake those, that with pure zeale do fight

for

### of the Ottoman.

103

for his most holy name, so dooth hee well know, how to find good and conuenient meanes for the discouerie of all the secrets of his enemies vnto the true ministers of his Holie will, as hee did to *Eli-Elizeus*, *Zeus*, when hee disclosed vnto him the Counsels of the King of *Syria*, although hee vsed all the care and cunning that hee had to conceale them from him.

Moreover it would bee also necessarie to haue such persons in the Armada, as are verie expert in the knowledge of the Countryes, least it happen to them, as it happened to the Knights of *Malta*, who fayled in the surprise of *Modone*, because they did not know at the first that there was a Bridge to bee passed ouer, presently after they had made their first entrance.

It were likewise very fitte and conuenient, that the saide persons (as I haue told you alreadie) should haue the language, a sound iudgement, good credite, and quicke vnderstanding, but especially, and aboue all, that they haue a desire to doe good to Christendome. Qualities (no doubt) that are to bee found in plentifull manner in some that liue at this day, and would be verie apt and meet instruments to bring greate enterprises to good passe, if our Princes by their good seruice and meanes would resolute themselues to doe it in deed as did Pope *Iuly the II*, by the helpe of *Constantine Cominiatus*, and Pope *Pius the V*. who calld Fryer *Gasper Bruni*, the commendatorie of *Jerusalem* from *Dulcigno*, of purpose to vse him in the Armada against the Turke and other matters of mo-

Knowledge of  
the Country  
Knights of  
Malta.

Languages,  
Iudgement,  
Credite,  
Vnderstanding  
and desire to  
praise God.

D d 3

me nt

### The third part

Why Princes do ostentia  
ment appertaining to that warre. But the mischiefe  
entertaine the is, that for the most part our Princes doe giue cre-  
opinions of dite to such persons, as neither know nor vnder-  
such as know stand the mysterie and Art of warrefare, either be-  
least. cause thole places are carried away by fauour, yea  
and verie oftentimes disposed vpon those that vn-  
derstand least: or because they make a promise to  
performe the enterprise with lesse charges and ex-  
penses then others will doe: or by flatterie, or by  
ambition, or rather (as I thinke) to make a gaine  
thereof: wherevpon there ariseth great losse and  
shame, both to the Princes themselues, and to the  
Promoters and furtherers of such goodly instru-  
ments.

### § XXX.

The Turke feareth the assault of the Dardanelli.   
  
TO be briefe, the Turke is afraid, least the Arma-  
da of Spaine, or any other fleete of ships might  
depart in Iune with some North-westernly windes,  
not to goe (as it went the last yeaer to lache *Pata-*  
*rasse*) or into *Alexandria* (as it thought to haue  
done long ago) or into Africa (as peraduenture it  
will be no difficult matter for the Spanish Armada  
to doe) or lastly to endomage and annoy some o-  
ther place both within and without the Adriatike  
Sea, which I will not name, because I will not disco-  
uer or disclose that which is not so well knowne in  
Hystories, as some other things also are (that I haue  
touched) and which peraduenture may one day be  
happily attempted: but to goe, and vpon a sodaine  
to assault the *Dardanelli*, called in auncient times

*Sestus*

### of the Ottoman.

104.

*Sestus* and *Abydo*, which are (as it were) the forewals  
and the first hate of entrance into his pallace, and  
*Mahamet* the second fortified them as soone as hee  
had gotten *Constantinople*. And so much the rather,  
for that if they haue the said windes fauourable, the  
voyage will be but of a fewe dayes iourney: and by  
sayling to the *Gulfe Lanciato*, the passage will be al-  
so more safe from the enemies Armada. For al-  
though our Armada should bee perceiued by the  
Turkes that keepe on the sea coasts, yet would they  
thinke that it were the Turkish fleete. And therefore  
it will bee verie needfull for thole that desire to at-  
tempt this enterprise, that they would remember,  
not to put this deuise in execution, vntill such time  
as they shall know for a certaintie, that the enemies  
Armada is gone forth.

And yet I do not say, that when the *Dardanelli* are  
surprised & taken, *Constantinople* will presently be got-  
ten, as some haue written: but this I say, that it wil-  
put that Citie in such a frigh, as it will be no great  
matter, if any tumult be raised to make the entrance  
into it, verie easie of it selfe and open, especially if  
they shall haue before hand entertained some intel-  
ligence within the Citie, or that the Turke shall  
haue receiued some notable overthrow, eyther by  
land or Sea.

The *Dardanelli*, that is on Europes side, hath a  
hill that doth wholy commaund it. The other which  
is in *Natolia*, or *Asia*, as they call it, lieth in the plaine.  
They are both easie to be gotten, because they are  
built after the olde maner. Against that which stan-  
deth in *Asia*, the Abbay may also bee vsed, and so by  
making

By taking the  
*Dardanelli* the  
entrance into  
Turkic will be  
easie.

The distance  
of the *Darda-*  
*nelli*, the one  
from the os-  
mire, and from  
Gallipolis, and  
from Constan-  
tople,

### The third part

making great hilles of sand ( for it is built vpon the shore) it may be vndermined, as the Turkes vse to doe. They are in breadth distant the one from the other more then a mile and in length from *Gallipoli*, thirtie myles, and from *Constantinople* about a hundred and threescore.

### § XXXI.

How the Polonians, Hungarians, and Transylvanian may make outroads into the Turkish territories by diuerse waies. **T**here are likewise many other wayes, whereby the Polonians, the Hungarians, and the Transylvanians may attempt also by land with diuerse outroads in the time of Haruest to gaine vpon the Turke some place of good moment, and so enter within the enemies Countrey, by some way which they would little dreame off, and specially by keeping themselves towrdes the Sea, to the end they may be succoured by our Armadaes, if need should be. For so we reade, that heretofore ffeue hundred

The Taifali, what they are, **T**aifali alone (as *Zozimenus* writeth) which now are the Transylvanians, and Walachians, made an incursion vnder *Constantine*, euen as farre as *Constantinople*, to the exceeding affrightment and terror of the inhabitants of that Cittie. The wayes, whereof the Turkes are most afayed, are those of *Sophia*, of *Anadriopolis*, of *Philippo-polis*, and of those quarters.

The reading of histories in this point verry available. **B**ut to the ende that our Princes may bee assured, how after their departure from Italie, they may enter a great way within the Ottomans Countrey, and passe euen to *Constantinople* it selfe, let them reade the voyages of *Constantine* and *Licinius*, of *Constantius*,

### of the Ottoman. 105

*Constantius* and *Magnentius*, of *Iulian* and *Theodosius*, of *Eugenius*, of *Arbogastes*, of *Theodoricus* king of the Gothes, of *Odoacre* king of the Heruli, of *Alaricus* king also of the Gothes, & of *Attila*, of whō I haue before made mention. And lastly let them very well consider, of the purposes and deuises that *Mithridates* had to come into Italie, when he departed from *Pontus*, and *Scythia*, that is to say, from *Circasia* and *Tartaria*: The Desaignements of *Philip* king of *Macedonie* to passe into the Adriatike sea. The disbarking and landing of the Romanes vpon the Macedonians, and the retурne which the Captaines of *Vespasian*, of *Antonie* the first, and of *Mutianus* made into Italy out of Soria, and also the iourney of *Boemond*, and others, when they went to the conquest of the holy land, and other such like voyages, that may be collected out of Histories.

### § XXXII.

**F**inally, I will set downe for the last poynt, as it were for a Conclusion or Epilogue, of so much as hath beene spoken, what *Francis Guicciardin* writeth of Pope *Leo* the tenth, when he greatly feared, that *Selim* would haue passed into Italie, not vnlke to that which other Popes haue done, as *P. Ionius* writeth in his counsell giuen for the warre against the Turke, and sundry other Authours likewise. The Pope (saith *Guicciardin*) like an vniersall father, being the consultation of Pope Leo the tenth, about the attempt of making warre against the Turke. **F**rances *Guicciardin*, thinking himselfe of the Common good of Christendome, after hee had first caused verie devout prayers and supplications to bee celebrated to God,

E c where-

### *The third part*

whereunto hee went himselfe bare-foot: he sent writers or Briefes to all the Princes Christian, warning them of the great daunger that was imminent and at hand, and comfortably exhorted them, that laying aside all discordes and contentions, they would readilie attend vpon the defence of religion, and their owne common safety, by vniiting their mindes and their Forces against the Turke, and by going to assault him, euen at his own home: Hee published vniuersall and generall truces betwenee the said Princes, with the punishment of the heauiest censures of the Church to be inflicted vpon such as gaineſaide the ſame, to the end, that onely ſuch matters as belonged to ſo great an enterprize, ſhould bee entartayned and handled. He diſpatched vnto them for the ſame purpose diuerſe Legate-Cardinals, men of great authoritie, and renowned awell for their expeſience in this buſineſſe, as alſo for their opinion of learning. He aduifed and conſulted with the Embaſſadors of euery Prince, and examined the ſeverall conceites and iudgements of militarie men, and of ſuch persons as were well acquainted with the Countryes, with the diſpoſition of the Prouinces, and with the Forces and Armes of that Empire. Laſt of all hee reſoluēd with himſelfe, that it was moſt neceſſarie to prouide a very great ſumme of Moneyes, partly by a contriбуſion voluntarie to bee made among the ſaide Princes, and partly by an vniuersall Imposition to bee leuiued vpon all Christian Nations: and therevpon the Emperor accompanied with the Hungarian and Polonian

### *of the Ottoman.*

106

Polonian Hoſſemen (who are verie warlike Nati-  
ons, and well exerciſed with continuall warres a-  
gainſt the Turkes) and with ſuch an armie of Dutch  
Hoſfe and Foote, as were requisite for ſo great an  
Enterprize, to ſayle by the Danowe into *Bosſina*: (hee would ſay into *Seruia*, for ſo was the vpper  
*Mysia* called in auncient times) and ſo to goe from  
thence into *Thracia*, & approching neare vnto *Con-  
ſtantinople*, the verie ſate of the Empire of the *Ottoman*: Secondly, that the king of *France* with all  
the Forces of his owne kingdome, of the *Venetians*  
and of other Princes of *Italie*, accompanied with the  
Footemen of the *Swizzers*, ſhould paſſe from the  
Hauen of *Brindes*, (aunciently called *Brundusium*,)  
into *Albania* (an eaſie and very ſhort paſſage) to  
assault *Grecia*, which is full of Christian inhabitants  
who both in that reſpect, and in regarde of the  
crueltie of the Turkish Empire, are very ready and  
well diſpoſed for a rebellion. Thirdly, that the  
Kinges of *Spaine*, of *Portugall*, & of *England* ſhould  
ioyne their Armadaes together at *Cartagena*, and  
at other Hauens thereaboutes, and ſo with C.C.  
ſhippes full of Spanish Footemen, and other ſoul-  
diers, addreſſe themſelues to the Straites of *Galli-  
poli*, of purpoſe to assault *Constantinople* it ſelue, after  
they had wonne the *Dardanelli*, otherwise called  
the two Castles, ſituate in the mouth of the ſaide  
*Streytes*. In the which iourney the Pope himſelfe  
would ſayle likewiſe, taking ſhippe at *Ancona* with  
C. Beaked ſhippes (hee would ſay *Gallyes*) in  
his Companie. So that the State and Empire  
of the Turkes being assaulted both by land and by  
Sea,

E c 2

### *The third part*

Sea, on all sides, with these preparations, (especially for that the Turkes doe principally build vpon this foundation, to defend themselues in the open field:) it were likely/chiefly by Gods helpe and assistance) that a happie end might be expected and atchieued of so pitifull and lamentable a warre.

### § XXXIII.

*I* Would to God it might please his Maiestie, that euen as the vniting togither of all the Princes Christian agaynst the Turke, either by a proportionable contributing to the expenses of so yniuersall and holie an association, or else euerie one of them by himselfe (I speake of such as are more conueniently able to do it then the rest) by setting vpon the enemie all at one time, as this (I say) is thought to bee a matter in the eye and iudgement of man, surely not altogether impossible, but in deed verie hard and difficult, especially in these dayes, for the sinnes of the world, which require wrath and calamitie : So hee would vouchsafe with the eie of his iustice to looke vpon the *Ottoman*, that he bee no longer the rodde and scourge of his Diuine furie against vs, but like an unprofitable wretch, and proude *Colossus*, he may at the last bee broken into verie small peeces, by the stone of his Diuine power : or at the least, with the eye of his mercie, to beholde the Christian Princes, and to enspire into their heartes a minde and desire to binde themselfes togither in one, with the bond of true Charite, euen as there is but one faith which they professe

### *of the Ottoman.*

107

professe, and one Church wherein all true beleueers do liue, (and therfore is called a cōgregation:) to the end that leauing those subtil cōsiderations of their priuate interests and commodities, either in regard that their states are verie neer vnto the enemie, or in respect of the power of some, and the weaknes of others, or because the gaine and profit can not be equall and alike to euerie man, without any grediness of cominaunding, and without ambition of reigning, one in the East, another in the South, they would vnite themselues, not (as it were) for ceremonie & fashions sake, (for so *Guicciardin* himself saith) as these matters and practises haue heretofore been handled. But with effect, and in the zeale of true religion and pietie, with the glorie of his diuine Maiestie, and their owne saluation, against al the enemies of his most holy name. Imitating therein, that great *Godfrey of Boleine*, not onely in resolution, but also, (if need should so require) in alienating their owne proper states & dominions, as he did with the dukedom of *Boleine*, that so he might haue means to make & maintaine war against the same tyrant: as many other of those Lords did, that concurred in that holy league, whereof we haue told you before. Whereupon it pleased the Lord of Hoasts, either for our instruction, or for our shame and confusione, so to work with them that they recouered the holy Sepulchre, and with verie great glorie subdued all the East.

FINIS.